

FR-S

2015

OWNER'S MANUAL

READ CAREFULLY.
KEEP IN VEHICLE.
ENJOY.



what moves you

Your Scion dealer

Your Scion dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.

If there is not a Scion dealer near you, please call the following number:

■ U.S. OWNERS

- In the U.S. mainland or Canada:
Scion Customer Experience
1-866-70-SCION or **1-866-707-2466** (Toll-Free)
- In Hawaii:
Servco Automotive Customer Services
1-888-272-5515 (Toll-Free)

■ CANADIAN OWNERS

- In Canada or the U.S. mainland:
Scion Canada Customer Interaction Centre
1-866-9-SCION-1 or **1-866-972-4661** (Toll-Free)

Please access our **websites** for further information.

- The U.S. mainland: **www.scion.com**
- Hawaii: **www.scionhawaii.com**
- Canada: **www.scionnation.ca**

©2014 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	Before driving	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	When driving	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	Interior features	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	Maintenance and care	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	When trouble arises	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	Vehicle specifications	Detailed vehicle information.
7	For owners	Reporting safety defects for US owners, and seat belt and SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

1 Before driving

1-1. Key information

Keys	20
------------	----

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Smart key system.....	23
Wireless remote control	37
Doors.....	40
Trunk	42

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats	47
Rear seats	50
Head restraints.....	52
Seat belts	54
Steering wheel	61
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror.....	62
Outside rear view mirrors	63

1-4. Opening and closing the windows

Power windows	66
---------------------	----

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap	69
---------------------------------	----

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system	73
Alarm	75
Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.).....	79

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture	80
SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)	82
Front passenger occupant classification system.....	117
Child restraint systems	125
Installing child restraints	129

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle	140
Engine (ignition) switch.....	153
Automatic transmission	162
Manual Transmission	169
Turn signal lever	172
Parking brake	173
Horn	174

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters	175
Indicators and warning lights	179
Multi-information display	183

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch..... 188
Windshield wipers and washer 193

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control..... 196
Driving assist systems 201

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage 207
Vehicle load limits 211
Winter driving tips 212
Trailer towing 216
Dinghy towing 217

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system 220
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers..... 229

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the AUX/USB port..... 231
Using the microphone 232

3-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 233
• Interior light 234

3-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features..... 235
• Glove box 236
• Bottle holders 237
• Cup holders/
console tray 238

3-5. Other interior features

Sun visors..... 240
Vanity mirrors 241
Clock 242
Outside temperature display 243
Power outlets..... 244
Floor mat 246

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 250
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 254

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 258
General maintenance 260
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 263

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions	264
Hood	267
Positioning a floor jack	269
Engine compartment	271
Tires	284
Tire inflation pressure.....	291
Wheels	295
Air conditioning filter.....	298
Electronic key battery.....	301
Checking and replacing fuses	303
Light bulbs.....	311

5 When trouble arises**5-1. Essential information**

Emergency flashers	322
If your vehicle needs to be towed	323
If you think something is wrong	331
Fuel pump shut off system.....	332

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... ..	333
If you have a flat tire	346
If the engine will not start	357
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P	360
If you lose your keys	361
If the electronic key does not operate properly	362
If the battery is discharged	366
If your vehicle overheats.....	370
If the vehicle becomes stuck	373
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency.....	375

6 Vehicle specifications**6-1. Specifications**

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)	378
Fuel information	390
Tire information.....	394

6-2. Customization

Customizable features	407
-----------------------------	-----

7 For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners	412
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)	413
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)	416

Index

Abbreviation list	438
Alphabetical index.....	439
What to do if... ..	449

1

2

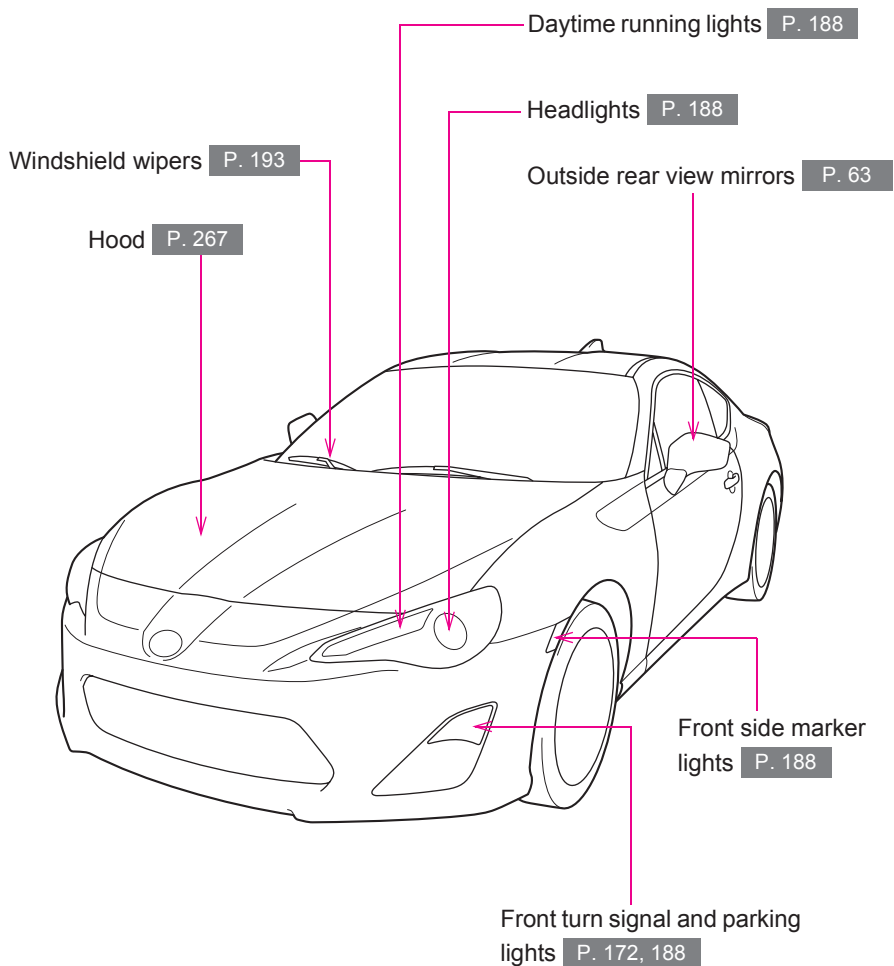
3

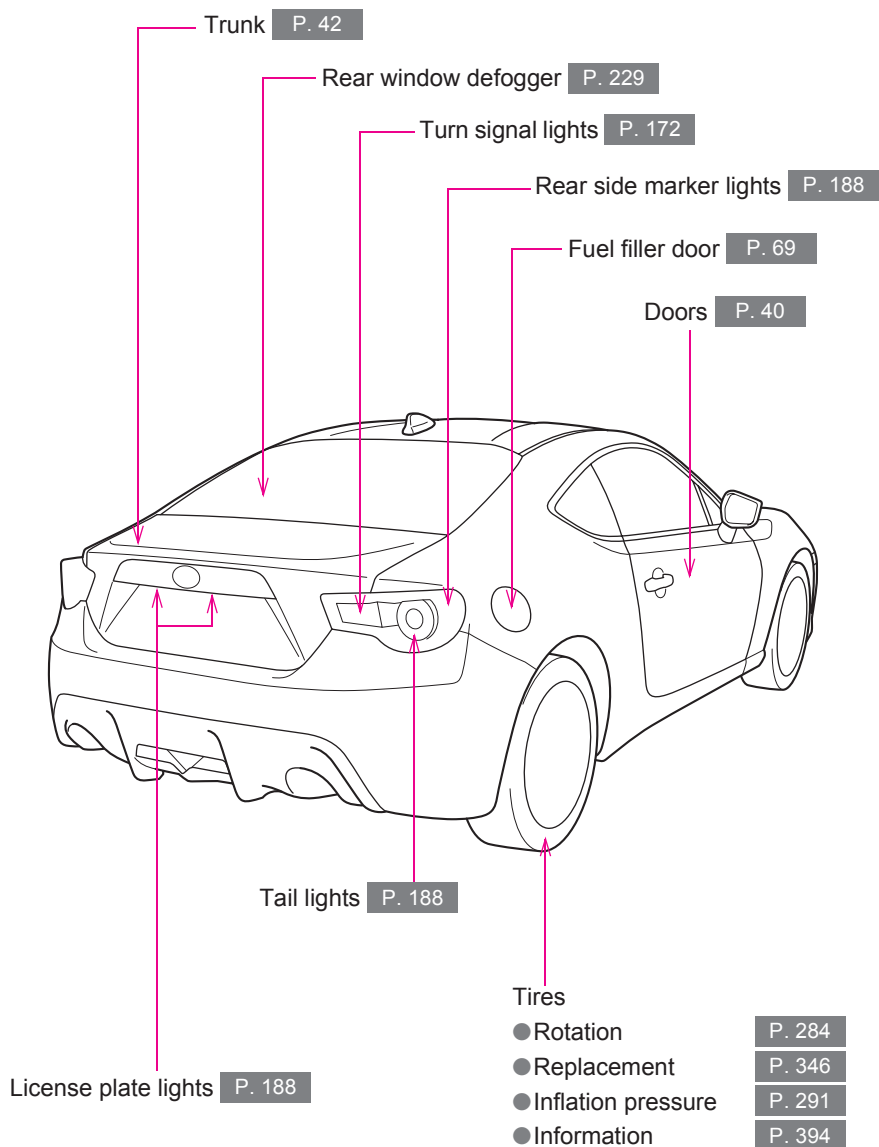
4

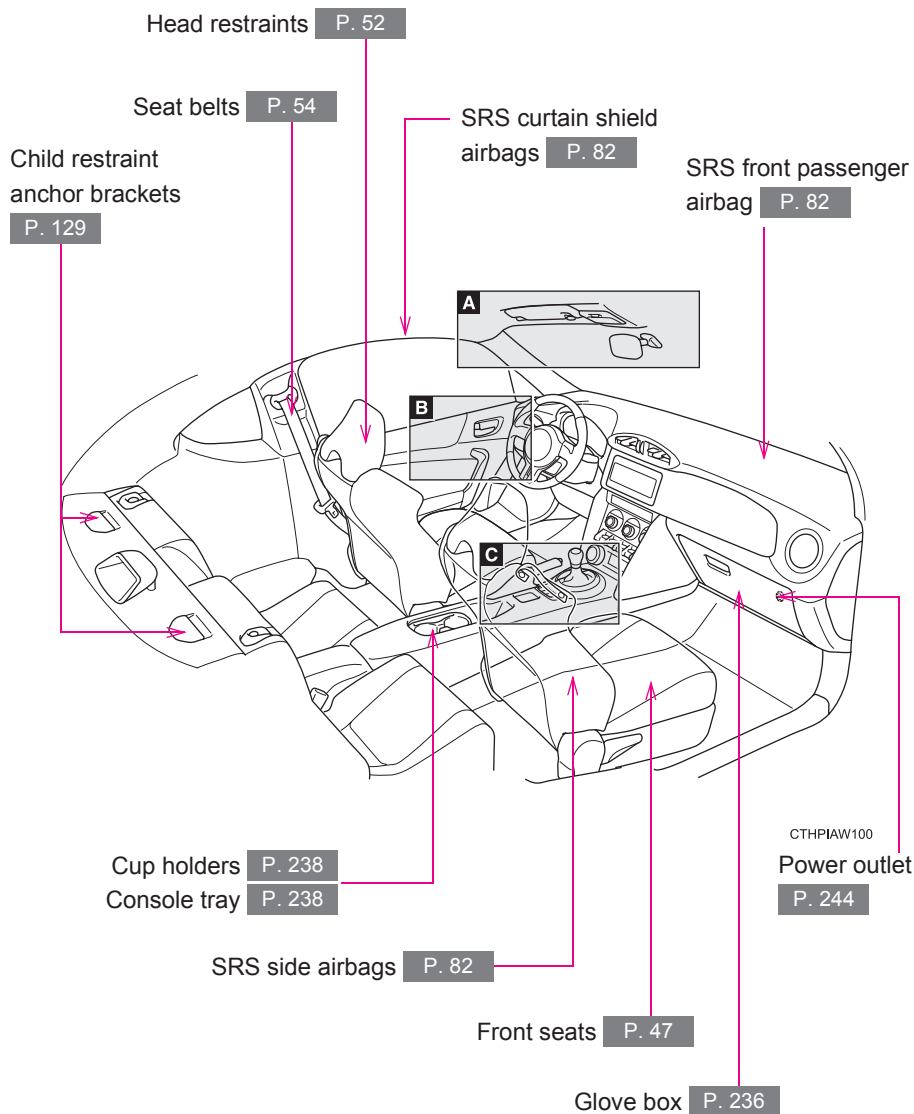
5

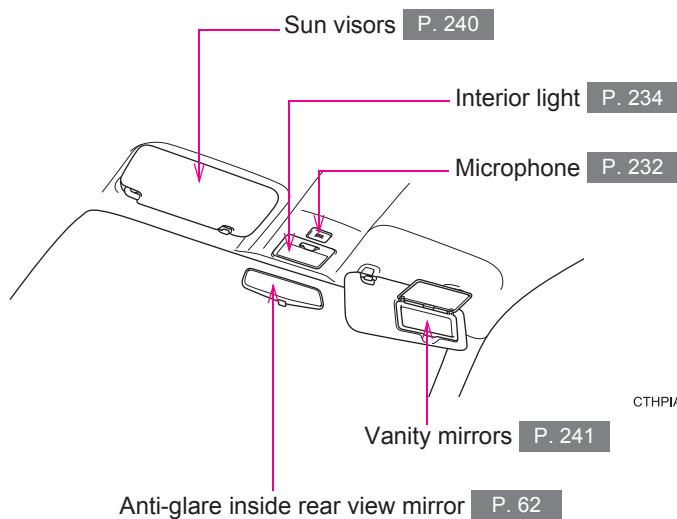
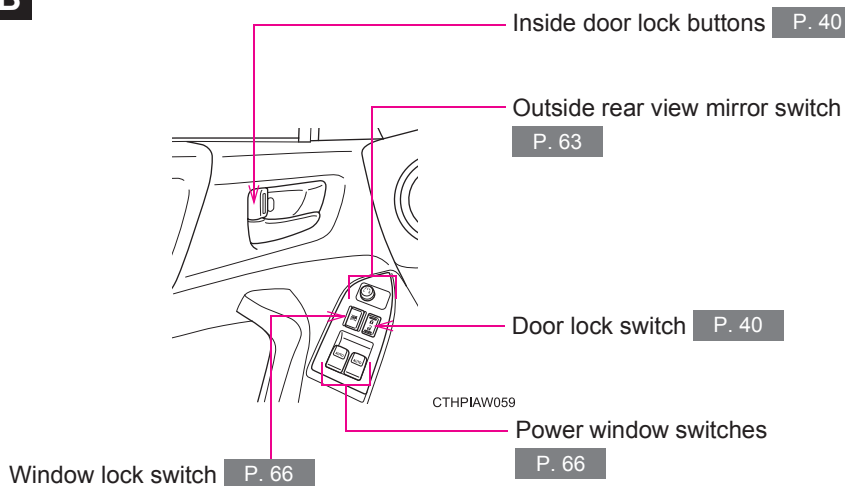
6

7

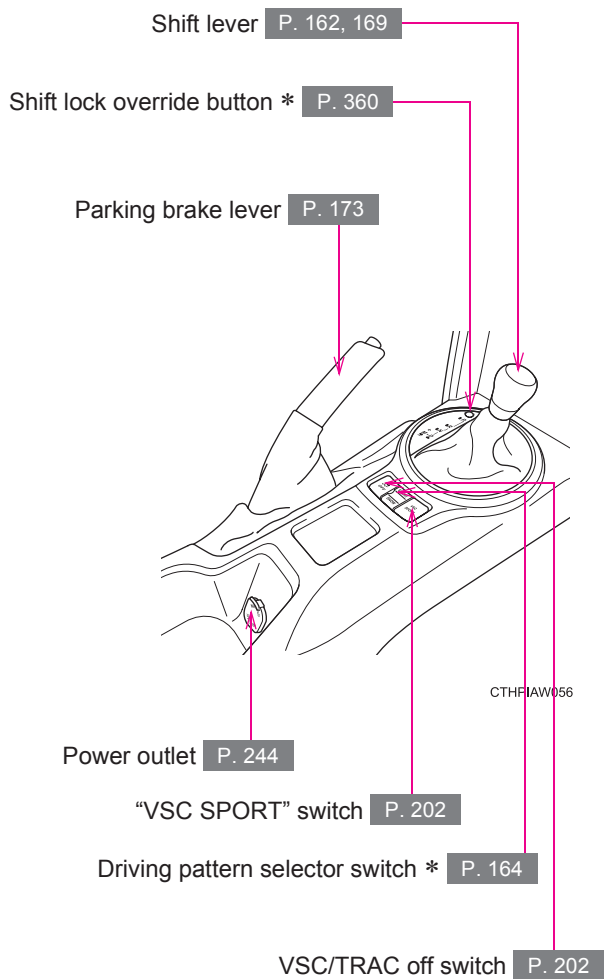




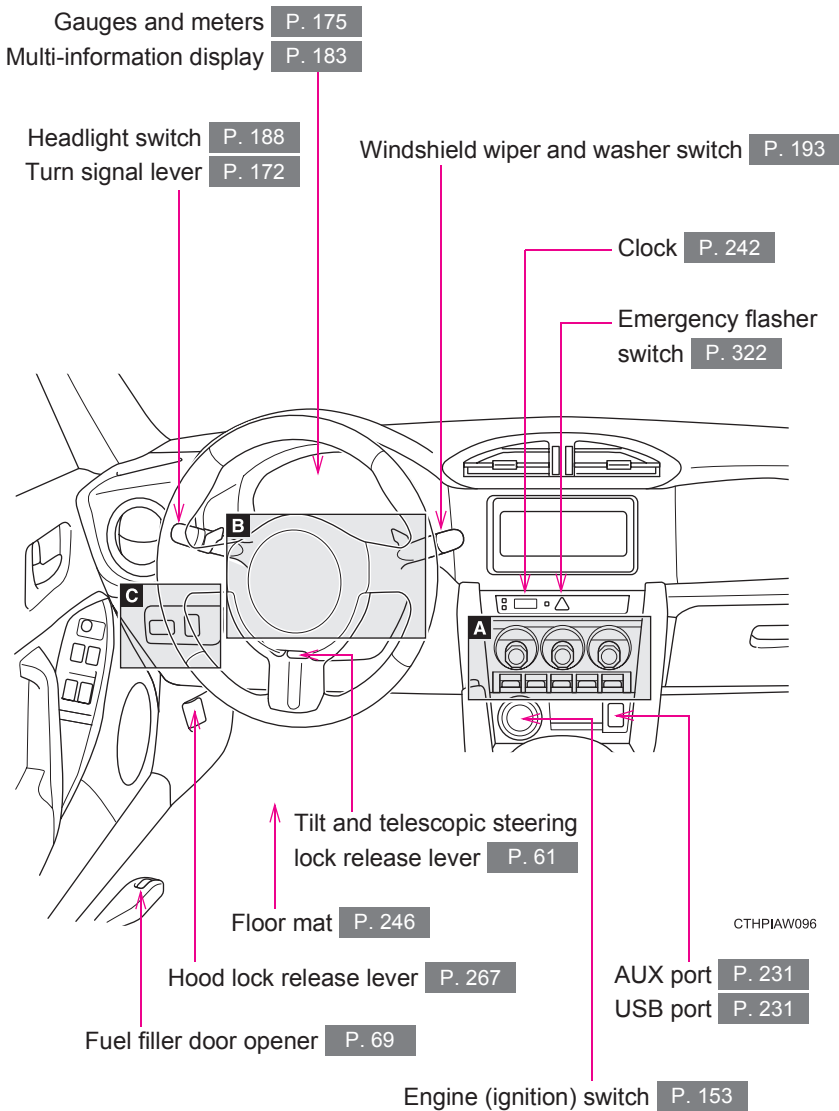


A**B**

C



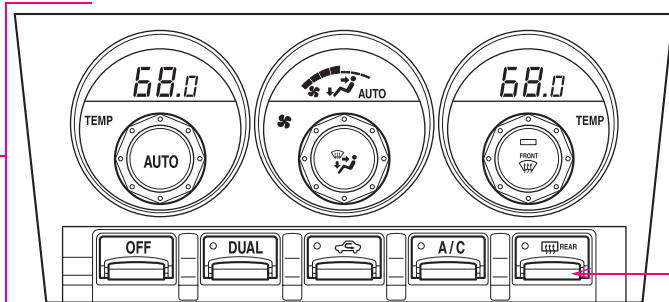
*: If equipped



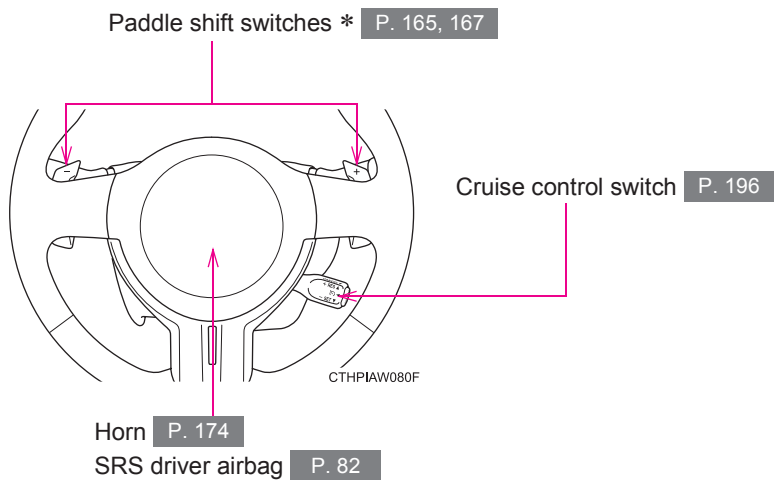
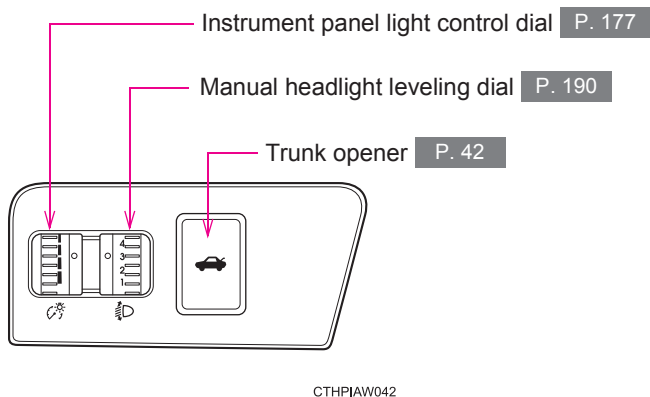
A

Air conditioning
system P. 220

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers
switch */rear window defogger switch * P. 229



CTHP1AW098

B**C**

*: If equipped

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Scion policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Scion

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Scion vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Scion does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Scion vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Scion products. Modification with non-genuine Scion products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Scion dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Scion will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Scion in a law suit

However, if necessary, Scion may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Scion

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Scion contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Scion dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

 **CAUTION**

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause death or serious injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of death or serious injury to yourself and others.

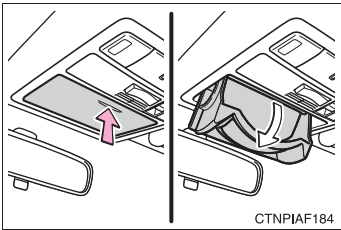
 **NOTICE**

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Scion and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations

 **Safety symbol**

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen.”



Arrows indicating operations

 Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

 Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Before driving

1

1-1. Key information

Keys	20
------------	----

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Smart key system	23
Wireless remote control	37
Doors	40
Trunk	42

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats	47
Rear seats	50
Head restraints	52
Seat belts	54
Steering wheel	61
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror	62
Outside rear view mirrors	63

1-4. Opening and closing the windows

Power windows	66
---------------------	----

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap	69
---------------------------------	----

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system	73
Alarm	75
Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)	79

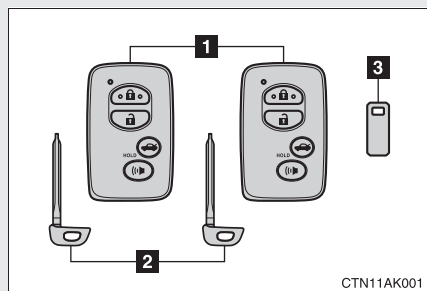
1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture	80
SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)	82
Front passenger occupant classification system	117
Child restraint systems	125
Installing child restraints	129

1-1. Key information

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



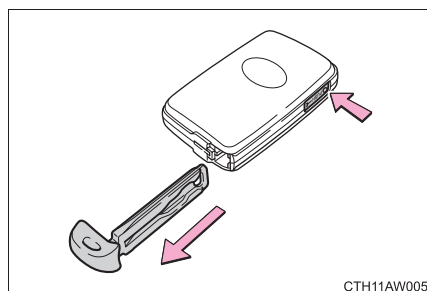
1 Electronic keys

- Operating the smart key system (→P. 23)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 37)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

Using the mechanical key



To take out the mechanical key, slide the release lever and take the key out.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 362)

■ When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off as circumstances demand. (→P. 42)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Scion dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 361)

■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing a key with wireless remote control function onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying the key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent key damage**

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ **Carrying the electronic key on your person**

Carry the electronic key 3.9 in. (10 cm) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 3.9 in. (10 cm) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ **In case of a smart key system malfunction or other key-related problems**

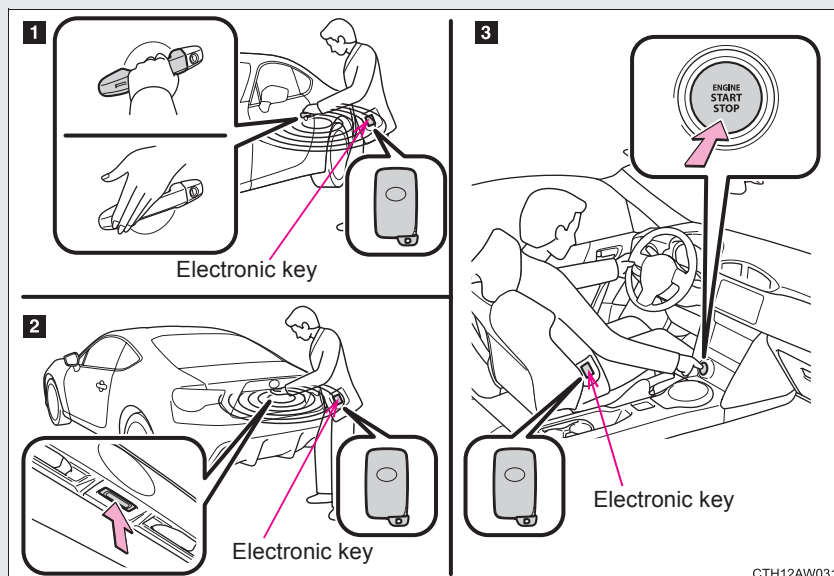
Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle to your Scion dealer.

■ **When a vehicle key is lost**

If the key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Scion dealer immediately with all remaining keys that were provided with your vehicle.

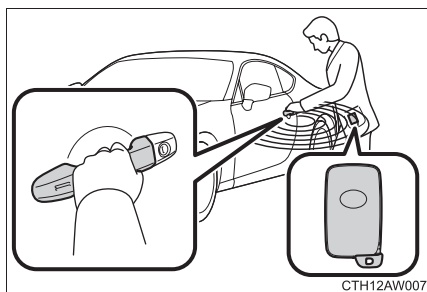
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Smart key system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



- 1** Unlocks and locks the doors (→P. 24)
- 2** Unlocks the trunk (→P. 25)
- 3** Starts the engine (→P. 153)

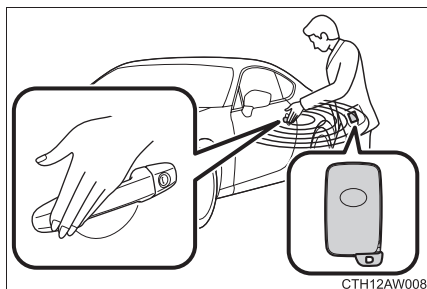
Unlocking and locking the doors



Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Grip the passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

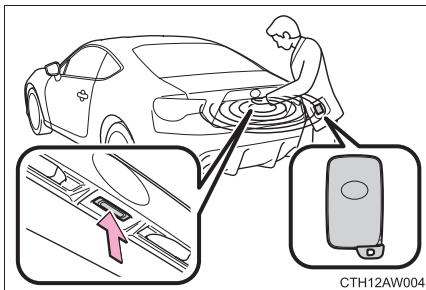
The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.



Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the side of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

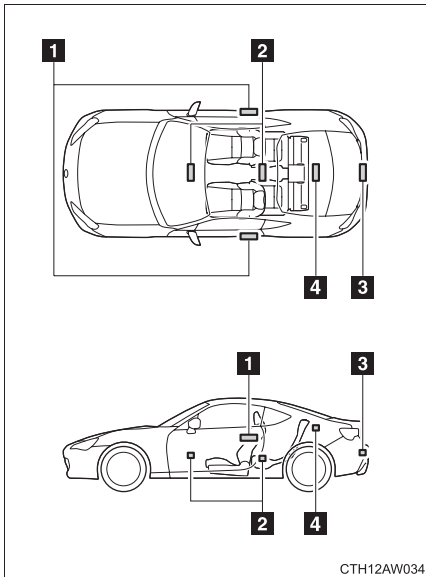
Unlocking the trunk



Press the button to unlock the trunk.

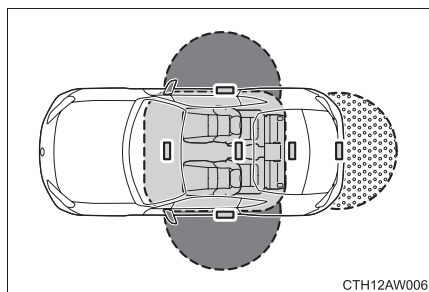
Antenna location and effective range

■ Antenna location



- 1 Antennas outside the cabin
- 2 Antennas inside the cabin
- 3 Antenna outside the trunk
- 4 Antenna inside the trunk

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



- When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 1.3 - 2.6 ft. (0.4 - 0.8 m) of either of the outside door handles. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When unlocking the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 1.3 - 2.6 ft. (0.4 - 0.8 m) of the trunk release button.

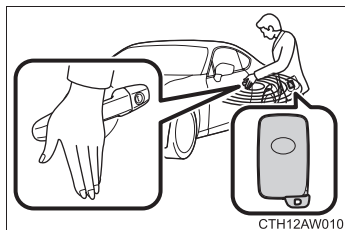
- When starting the engine or changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ Operation signals

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor



Use your palm to touch the lock sensor.

■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning lights are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures for the warning light that comes on. (→P. 343)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock either door by opening a door and putting the inside lock button into the lock position, then closing the door by pulling on the outside door handle with the electronic key still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart key system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.
	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm sounds continuously	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver’s door was open (or the driver’s door was opened while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off and close the driver’s door.
Interior alarm sounds continuously*	The driver’s door was opened while any shift position other than P was selected without turning off the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.	Shift the shift lever to P.

*: Vehicles with an automatic transmission only

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again. (However, depending on the location of the electronic key, the key may be detected as being in the vehicle. In this case, vehicle may be unlocked.)

■ Battery-saving function

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the vehicle battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

- In the following situations, the smart key system may take some time to unlock the doors.
 - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 6 ft. (2 m) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
 - The smart key system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart key system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any door except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart key system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart key system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly.

(Way of coping →P. 362)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
 - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - Hand warmers made of metal
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
 - A portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
 - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
 - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
 - Digital audio players
 - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

■ Notes for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
 - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is unlocked.
 - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear shelf or floor, in the door pockets or glove box, auxiliary box when the engine is started or “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

■ Notes for locking the doors

- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet when washing the vehicle while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In this case, place the electronic key in a location 6 ft. (2 m) or more away from the vehicle (take care to ensure that the key is not stolen), and continue to wash the vehicle.
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.

■ Notes for the unlocking function

- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door. Remove the gloves and touch the sensor on the back of the handle again.
- If the door handle becomes wet when washing the vehicle while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In this case, place the electronic key in a location 6 ft. (2 m) or more away from the vehicle (take care to ensure that the key is not stolen), and continue to wash the vehicle.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.
- The smart key system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 407)

■ Alarm

Using the smart key system to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 75)

■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

- Do not leave the electronic key inside the trunk.

The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (close to a spare tire, the inside edge of the trunk), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P. 43)

■ If the smart key system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 362)
- Starting the engine: →P. 363

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 343)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 301)
 - The smart key system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
 - The detection area becomes smaller.
 - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key close to any of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
 - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
 - Induction cookers
 - Table lamps

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 301

■ If the smart key system has been deactivated in a customized setting

- Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk: Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 37, 362)
- Starting the engine and changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes: →P. 363
- Stopping the engine: →P. 365

■ Customization that can be configured at Scion dealer

Settings (e.g. smart key system) can be changed.

(Customizable features: →P. 407)

■ Certification for smart key system

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQ23AAE

FCC ID: HYQ14ACX

FCC ID: Y8PSSPLF03

NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

NOTE:

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

 CAUTION

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart key system antennas. (→P. 25)

The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Scion dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

- User of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.

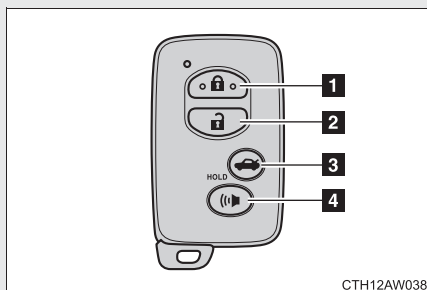
Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Scion dealer for details for disabling the entry function.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.



1 Locks both side doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

2 Unlocks both side doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Unlocks the trunk (press and hold)

4 Sounds the alarm (press and hold)

1

Before driving

■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

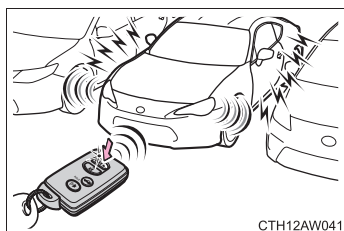
■ Panic mode



When  is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

■ Vehicle finder function



When the function is set, a buzzer (sounds once) and the emergency flashers (flash 3 times) are used to inform the driver of the vehicle's location.

Press  3 times within 5 seconds while within a circumference of approximately 30 ft. (10 m) from the vehicle.

However, if the interval between the 3 presses is short, the system may not be activated. This setting must be customized at your Scion dealer.

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ Alarm

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 75)

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 30

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 362)

■ **Key battery depletion**

→P. 34

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 301

■ **Confirmation of the registered key number**

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Scion dealer for details.

■ **Customization that can be configured at your Scion dealer**

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 407)

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

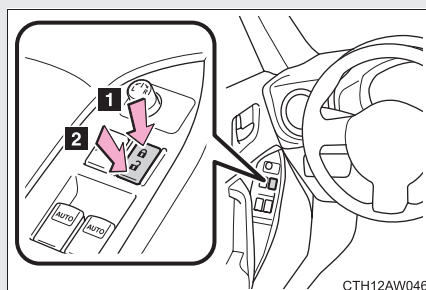
■ Entry function

→P. 24

■ Wireless remote control

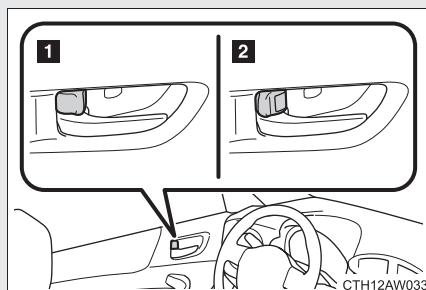
→P. 37

■ Door lock switch



- 1** Locks both side doors
- 2** Unlocks both side doors

■ Inside lock button



- 1** Locks the door
- 2** Unlocks the door

Locking the doors from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Window open/close function linked to door operation

In order to make opening and closing the doors easier, completely closed windows are linked to door operations. Therefore, when a door is opened, its window opens slightly. When a door is closed, its window closes completely.

However, if the battery has discharged or is disconnected, this function will not operate. (→P. 369)

If the smart key system has been deactivated in a customized setting

Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 37, 362)

CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock both side doors.
- Ensure that both side doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.

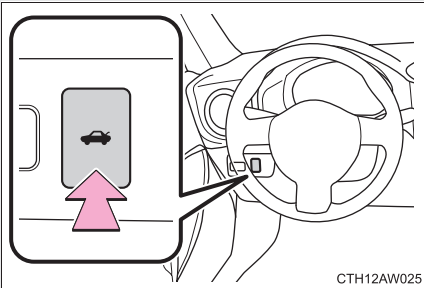
The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

■ Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle



Press and hold the opener switch to release the trunk lid.

■ Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

Entry function

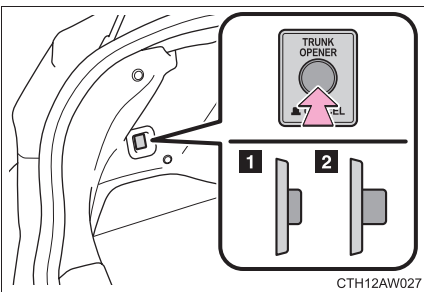
→P. 25

Wireless remote control

→P. 37

Canceling the trunk opener feature

To protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft, do the following:



Turn the main switch in the trunk off to disable the trunk opener.

1 On

2 Off

The trunk lid can only be opened with the mechanical key.

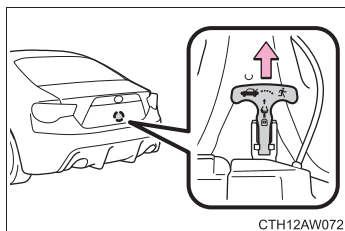
■ Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

■ Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside

- When all doors are being locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm.
In this case, the trunk lid can be opened using the entry function.
- Even when the spare electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors locked, the key confinement prevention function can be activated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Even when the electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors are locked, the key may not be detected depending on the places and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the doors to lock when the trunk is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if any one of the doors is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener.

■ Internal trunk release lever



The trunk lid can be opened by pulling on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.

■ Using the mechanical key

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 362)

■ Which key to the vehicle is to leave with a parking attendant after disabling the trunk opener main switch

→P. 21

 CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

- Keep the trunk lid closed while driving.

If the trunk lid is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage in the trunk may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.

In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the trunk lid before driving.

- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.

If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.

- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.

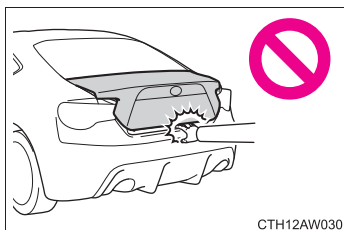
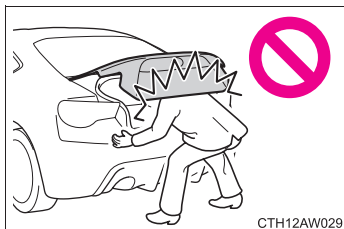
Doing so may cause the trunk lid to operate unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

! CAUTION**■ Using the trunk**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.



- The trunk lid may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
 - When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
 - When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Scion parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

 NOTICE

■ **Trunk damper stays**

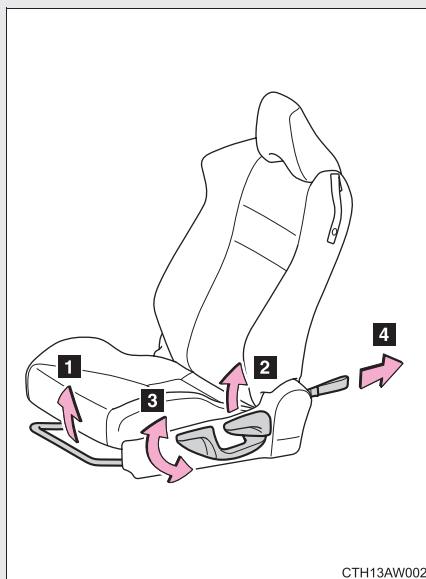
The trunk lid is equipped with damper stays that hold the trunk lid in place. Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause damage to trunk damper stays, resulting in a malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects such as stickers, plastic sheets and adhesives to damper stay rods.
- Do not touch damper stay rods with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Scion parts to the trunk lid.
- Do not apply lateral force to damper stays or place your hand on it.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats



- 1** Seat position adjustment lever
- 2** Seatback angle adjustment lever
- 3** Vertical height adjustment lever (driver's side only)
- 4** Seatback fold strap

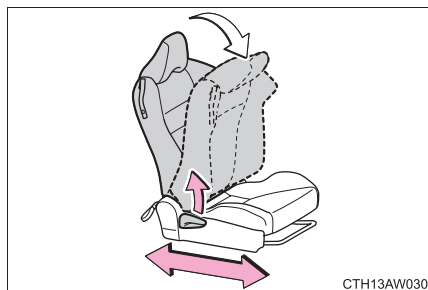
Getting in and out of the rear seats

To get in and out of the rear seats, use the seatback angle adjustment lever or seatback fold strap.

■ Before getting in or out of the rear seats

Release the seat belt from the seat belt guide. (→P. 55)

■ Getting in the rear seats

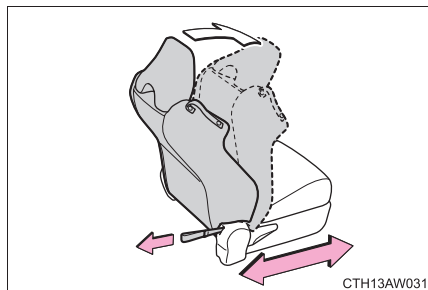


Lift the seatback angle adjustment lever.

The seatback will fold forward.

Front passenger seat only: The seat can be slid forward and backward.

■ Getting out of the rear seats



Pull the seatback fold strap.

The seatback will fold forward.

Front passenger seat only: The seat can be slid forward and backward.

■ After getting in or out of the rear seats

Return the seatback to the upright position until the seat locks.

Front passenger seat only: The seat will lock in position at the point where the seatback reaches the upright position.

■ Seat dust cover

Always remove the seat dust cover that may be attached at the time of purchase before using the seat.

 CAUTION**■ Seat adjustment**

- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

- After adjusting the seat, make sure that the seat is locked in position.
- Take care not to hit passengers with the seat.
When sliding the seat rearward, make sure not to squash the legs of the rear passengers.
- When returning the seatback upright, perform seatback angle adjustment while holding down the seatback.
- Do not pull on or use the seat belt guide to adjust or fold the front seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

■ When driving the vehicle

Never operate the seatback angle adjustment lever or seatback fold strap. Doing so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Getting in and out of the rear seats

- When getting in or out of the rear seats, make sure not to get your hands, legs, etc. squashed in the movable or connecting parts.
- When getting in or out of the rear seats, make sure not to trip on the seat rails.
- After getting in or out of the rear seats, always make sure the front seat is locked in position.

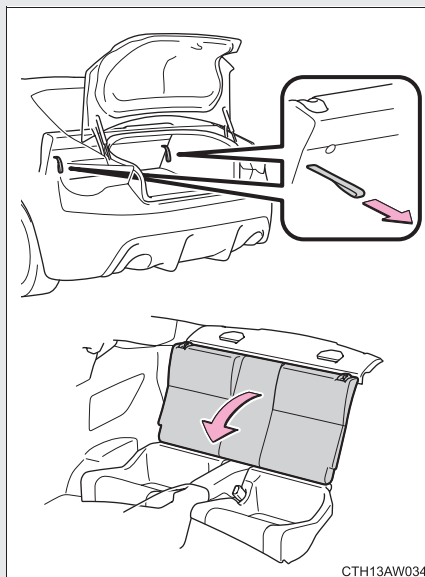
■ When operating the front seat from the rear seat

Make sure that no passenger is seated in the front seat.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Rear seats

The seatbacks of the rear seats can be folded down.



Pull the seatback lock release straps in the trunk for the seatback you wish to fold down.

To return the seatbacks to its original position, lift it up until it locks.

■ Seat dust cover

Always remove the seat dust cover that may be attached at the time of purchase before using the seat.

CAUTION

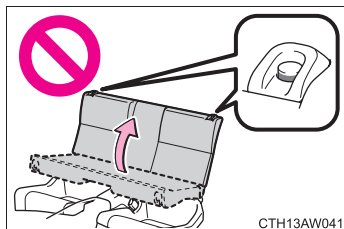
When folding the rear seatbacks down

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (automatic transmission) or N (manual transmission).
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the trunk while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the trunk.

After returning the rear seatback to the upright position

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

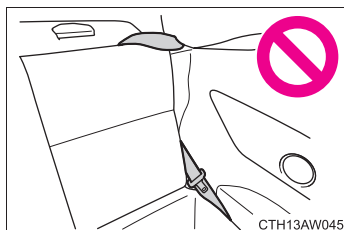


- Make sure that the seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.

If the seatback is not securely locked, the red portion of the seatback lock indicator will be visible. Make sure that the red portion is not visible.

- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

Before using the rear seat belts

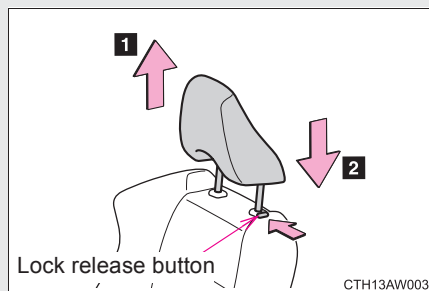


Always make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the seatback or twisted in one of the hooks that secure the seatback. Failure to do so may cause the seat belt to not be fastened correctly or to become ineffective in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for front seats.



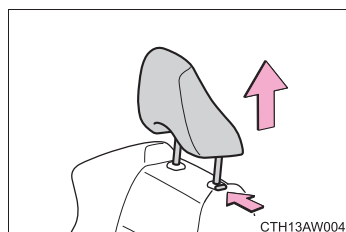
1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

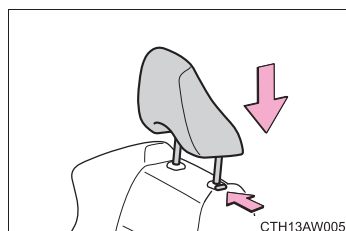
Push the head restraint down while pushing the lock release button.

■ Removing the head restraints



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

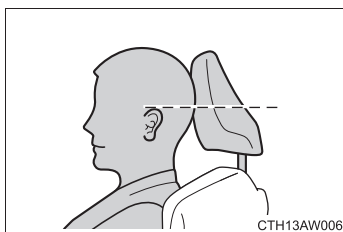
■ Installing the head restraints



Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

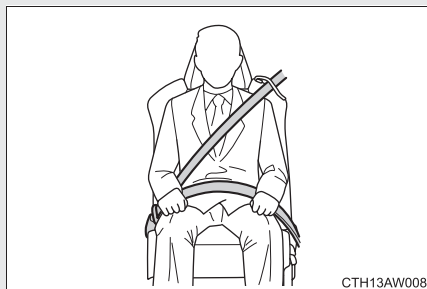
- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Seat belts

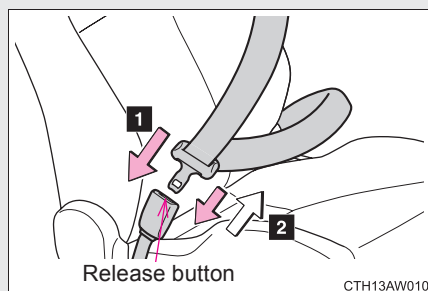
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt



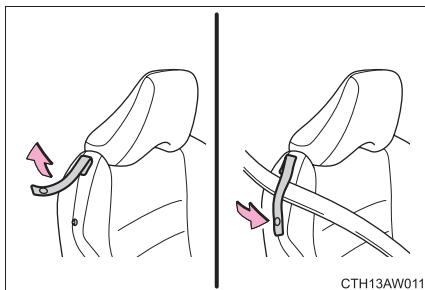
1 Fasten the seat belt

Push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 Release the seat belt

Press the release button.

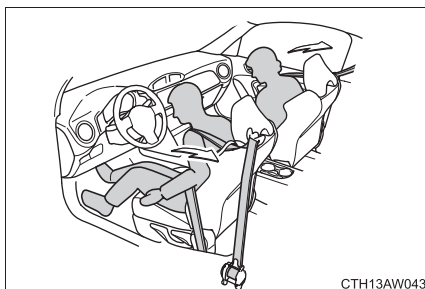
Front seat belt guide



To enable the seat belt to be easily extended, pass the seat belt through the guide.

When getting in or out of the rear seats, release the seat belt from the guide.

Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision and/or side collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

■ **Emergency locking retractor (ELR)**

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ **Automatic locking retractor (ALR)**

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 129)

■ **Child seat belt usage**

The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
(→P. 125)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 54 regarding seat belt usage.

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Seat belt pretensioners are not designed to activate in minor frontal or side impact, in rear impacts or in roll-over accidents.
- The following four components operate simultaneously when the vehicle is subjected to a severe frontal collision.
 - Seat belt pretensioner for driver
 - Seat belt pretensioner for front passenger
 - SRS front airbag for driver
 - SRS front airbag for front passenger*
- *: This does not operate while the occupant classification system determines to deactivate the airbag operation. For details, refer to “Front passenger’s SRS frontal airbag” (→P. 90)
- The following two components operate simultaneously when the vehicle is subjected to a severe collision on the driver’s seat side of the vehicle.
 - Seat belt pretensioner for driver
 - Side airbag for driver
- The following two components operate simultaneously when the vehicle is subjected to a severe collision on the front passenger’s seat side of the vehicle.
 - Seat belt pretensioner for front passenger
 - Side airbag for front passenger
- Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, both the driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt retractor assemblies must be replaced only by Scion dealer. When replacing seat belt retractor assemblies for the front seating positions, use only genuine Scion parts equipped with a force limiter.
- If either front seat belt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner, contact your Scion dealer as soon as possible.
- If the front seat belt retractor assembly or surrounding area has been damaged, contact your Scion dealer as soon as possible.
- When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it has seat belt pretensioners by alerting the buyer to the contents of this section.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

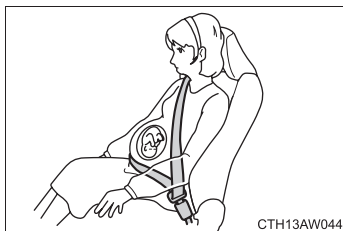
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Scion recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

CAUTION

Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 54)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

People with a medical condition

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Scion dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

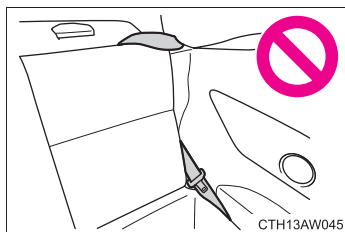
■ **Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Replace a damaged seat belt immediately. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Scion dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there's no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Scion dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When using the seat belt guide**

- Always make sure that the belt is not twisted, and runs freely through the guide.
- Regardless of whether the guide is used or not, always secure the seat belt guide button.
- Do not hang from or pull the guide forcefully.

■ **Before using the rear seat belts**

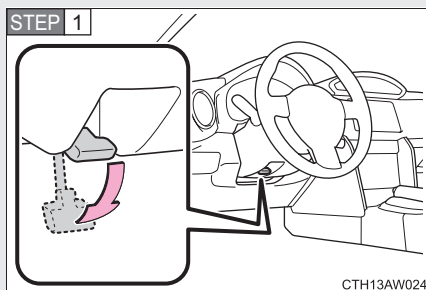


Always make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the seatback or twisted in one of the hooks that secure the seatback. Failure to do so may cause the seat belt to not be fastened correctly or to become ineffective in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury.

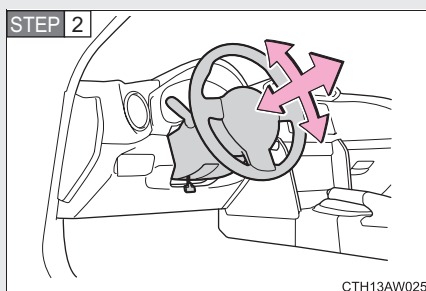
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.



Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ After adjusting the steering wheel

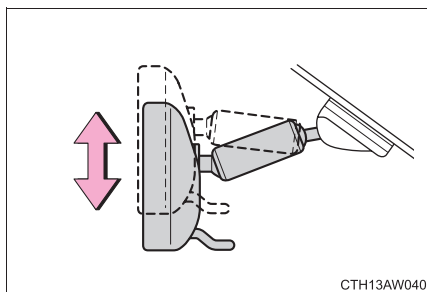
Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked. Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view in accordance with the driver's seating posture.

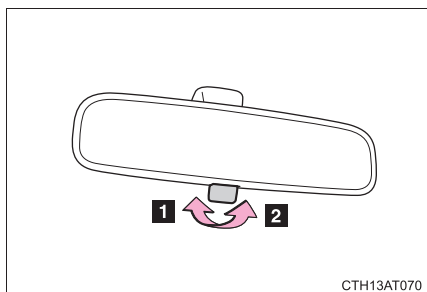
Adjusting the height of rear view mirror



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

Anti-glare function

Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.



1 Normal position

2 Anti-glare position

CAUTION

Caution while driving

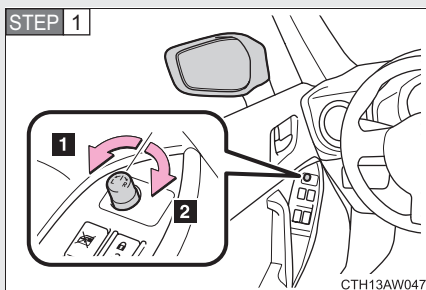
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

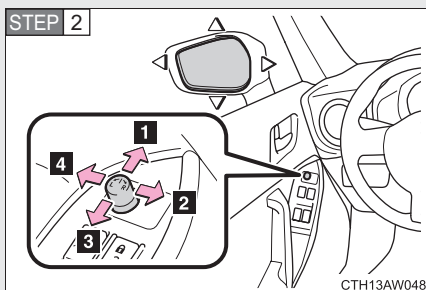
Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch.



Select a mirror to adjust.

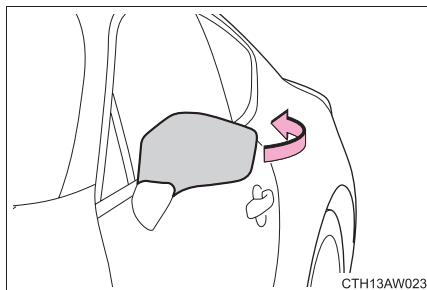
- 1** Left
- 2** Right



Adjust the mirror.

- 1** Up
- 2** Right
- 3** Down
- 4** Left

Folding the mirrors



Push the mirror back in the direction of the vehicle's rear.

■ The mirrors can be adjusted when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When the mirrors are fogged up (vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers)

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 229)

 CAUTION**■ When driving the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while driving.

Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating (vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers)

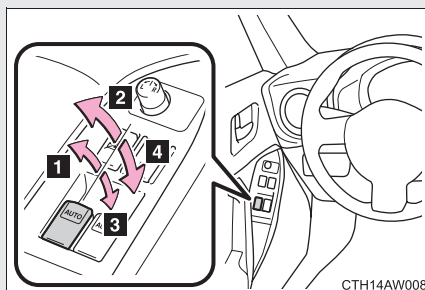
Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

1-4. Opening and closing the windows

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

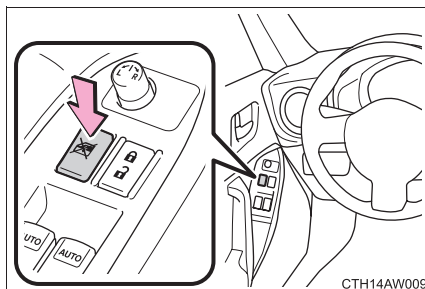
Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



- 1** Closing
- 2** One-touch closing*
- 3** Opening
- 4** One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Window lock switch



Press the switch down to lock the passenger window glasses.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the body, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, close all the doors and perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

STEP 1 After stopping the vehicle, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position two consecutive times.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again and continue holding for 1 second or more after the window closes completely.

If you push the power window switch to the opening position while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer.

CAUTION

■ Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 66)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

1-5. Refueling

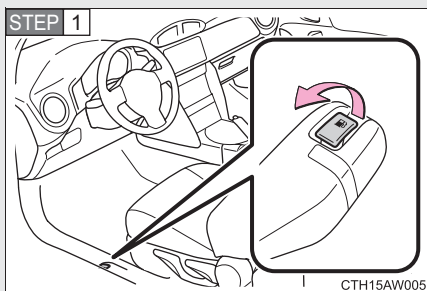
Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

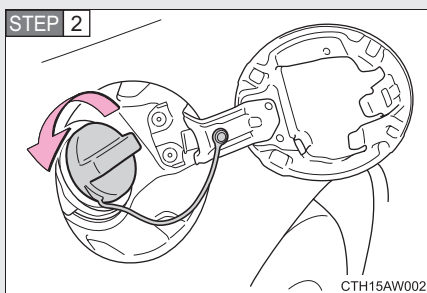
■ Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel. (→P. 70)

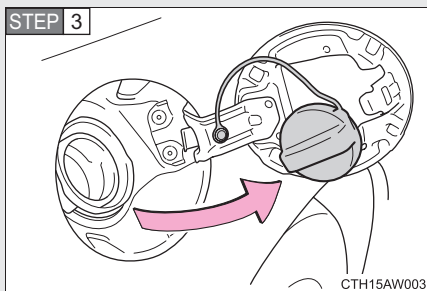
■ Opening the fuel tank cap



Pull up the opener to open the fuel filler door.

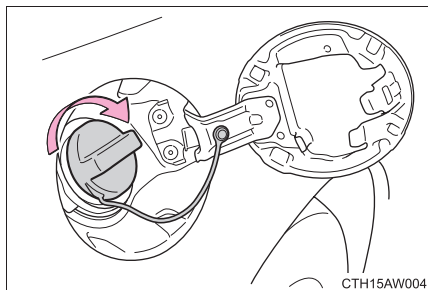


Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.

Fuel types

Unleaded gasoline (octane rating of 93 [98 RON] or higher)

If unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 93 (98 RON) is not available, unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (95 RON) may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

 CAUTION**■ Refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not handle fuel indoors.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not allow others to approach the area of the vehicle near the fuel filler pipe while refueling is in progress.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

 CAUTION

■ **When refueling**

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off
- Do not top off the fuel tank
- Observe other precautions that are posted at the service station.
- Turn the cap to the right until it clicks to ensure that it is fully tightened. If the cap is not securely tightened, fuel spillage could occur in the event of an accident, creating a fire hazard.

■ **When replacing the fuel cap**

Do not use anything but a genuine Scion fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE

■ **Refueling**

- Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.
- Never add any cleaning agents to the fuel tank. The addition of a cleaning agent may cause damage to the fuel system.
- Immediately put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.

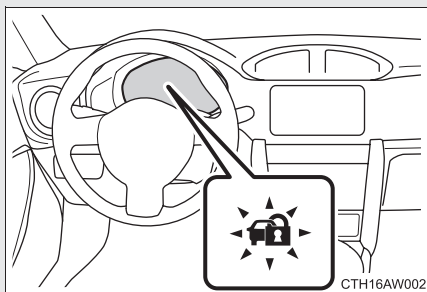
1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.



The indicator light flashes after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

1

Before driving

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ **Certification for engine immobilizer system**

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: Y8PSSPIMB03

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

NOTE:

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

 NOTICE

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Alarm

The alarm's default setting is set to off. To use the alarm, perform the activating the alarm system procedures.

The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forcible entry is detected.

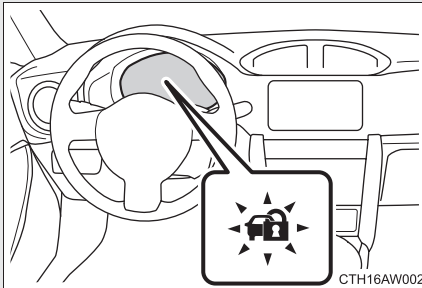
■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered when a locked door or the trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control while the alarm is set.

■ Setting the alarm system

Close the doors and/or trunk and perform one of the following:

- Lock the doors using the entry function.
- Lock the doors using the wireless remote control.
- Lock the doors from the outside without using a key.
(→P. 41)



The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds or more elapse.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

■ **Deactivating or stopping the alarm**

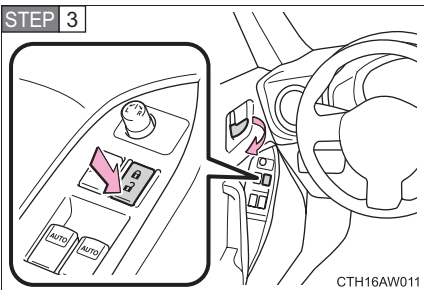
Perform one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function.
- Unlock the doors using the wireless remote control.
- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

Activating/deactivating the alarm system

STEP 1 Check that both side doors and the trunk are closed.

STEP 2 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.



Open the driver's door while pressing and holding  on the door lock switch and continue to press  for approximately 10 seconds after the driver's door has opened.

The alarm system changes between activated and deactivated as follows.

Alarm status	Horn	Multi-information display
Deactivated	Sounds twice	AL oF
Activated	Sounds once	AL on

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ Opening and closing the trunk

- If the alarm setting operations are performed with the trunk left open, the alarm will not be set. After closing the trunk, the alarm is set after 30 seconds or more elapse.
- When the trunk is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control while the alarm is set, the alarm goes into standby mode. After closing the trunk, the alarm is set again after 30 seconds or more elapse.

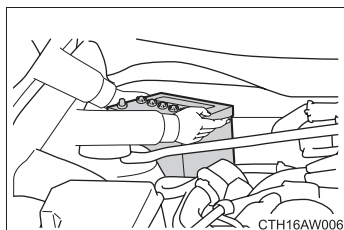
■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations.

Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or the trunk.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

■ When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to deactivate the alarm system.

If the battery is disconnected before deactivating the alarm system, the alarm may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

■ Customization that can be configured at your Scion dealer

Settings (e.g. alarm system) can be changed.

(Customizable features →P. 407)

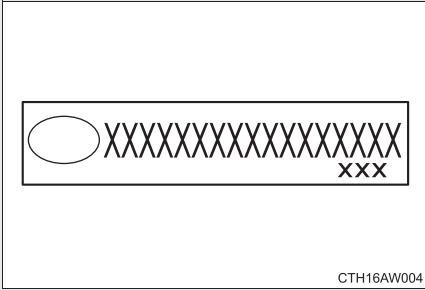
NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1-6. Theft deterrent system

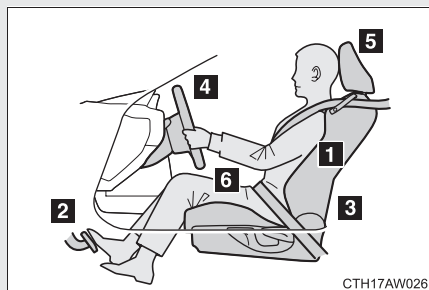
Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)



These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



- 1** Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 47)
- 2** Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 47)
- 3** Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable. (→P. 47)
- 4** Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel to allow easy operation and to ensure the air-bag is facing your chest. (→P. 61)
- 5** Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 52)
- 6** Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 54)

 CAUTION**■ While driving**

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

■ Adjusting the seat position

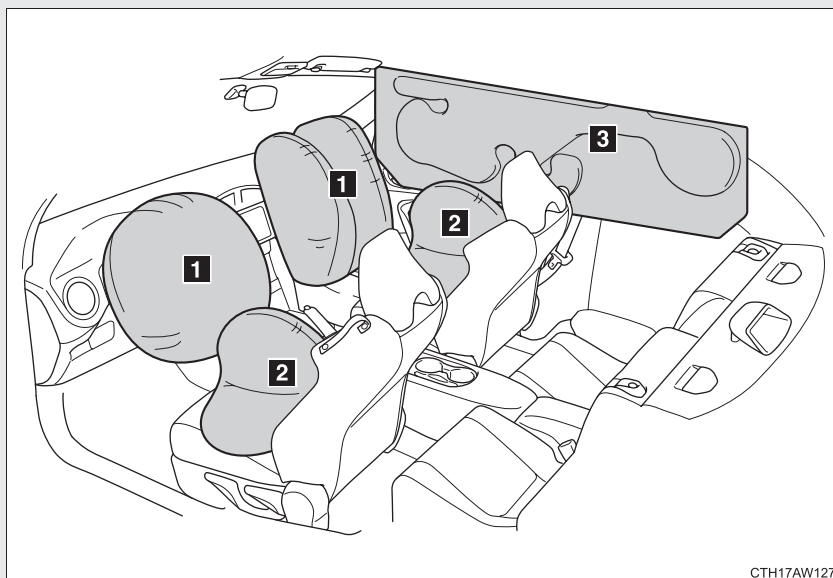
- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

1-7. Safety information

SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS: This stands for supplemental restraint system. This name is used because the airbag system supplements the vehicle's seat belts.



CTH17AW127

Models with SRS airbags and seat belts for driver, front passenger, and window-side rear passengers

Your vehicle is equipped with a supplemental restraint system in addition to a seat belt at each front seating position and each rear window-side seating positions. The supplemental restraint system (SRS) consists of six airbags. The configurations are as follows.

- 1 Driver's and front passenger's frontal airbags
- 2 Driver's and front passenger's side airbags
- 3 Curtain shield airbags (for driver, front passenger, and window-side rear passengers)

These SRS airbags are designed only as a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seat belt.

The system also controls front seat belt pretensioners. For operation instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt pretensioner, refer to "Seat belt pretensioners". (→P. 55)

■ When you sell your vehicle

When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it is equipped with SRS airbags by alerting the buyer to the applicable section in this Owner's Manual.

 CAUTION

■ **SRS airbag**

- To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seat belts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS airbag is designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seat belt. It does not eliminate the need to fasten seat belts. In combination with the seat belts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.

Not wearing a seat belt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.

For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, refer to "Seat belts". (→P. 54)

- Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the SRS airbag. Because the SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed - faster than the blink of an eye - and force to protect in high speed collisions, the force of an airbag can injure an occupant whose body is too close to SRS airbag.

It is also important to wear your seat belt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown forward during pre-accident braking.

Even when properly positioned, there remains a possibility that an occupant may suffer minor injury such as abrasions and bruises to the face or arms because of the SRS airbag deployment force.

- The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Do not place any objects over or near the SRS airbag cover or between you and the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.

CAUTION

SRS airbag



- Put children aged 12 and under in the rear seat properly restrained at all times. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are 12 years of age and under and are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

For that reason, we strongly recommend that ALL children (including those in child seats and those that have out-grown child restraint devices) sit in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seat belt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

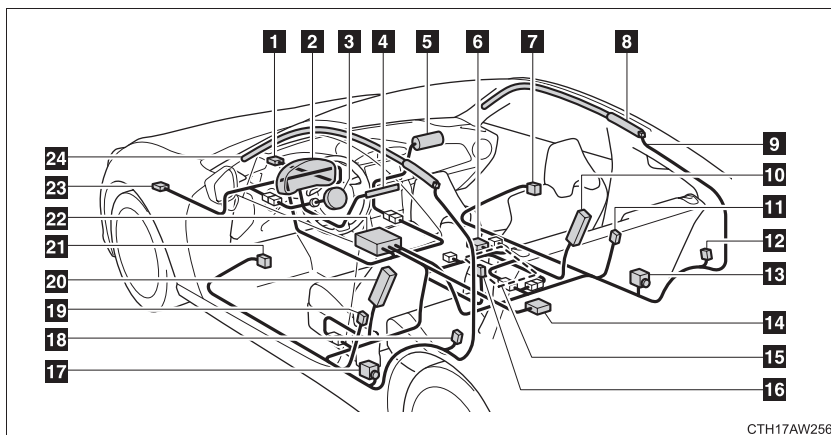
For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems". (→P. 125)

 CAUTION

■ **SRS airbag**

- NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.
- Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.
- When the SRS airbag deploys, some smoke will be released. This smoke could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. If you or your passengers have breathing problems after SRS airbag deploys, get fresh air promptly.
- A deploying SRS airbag releases hot gas. Occupants could get burned if they come into direct contact with the hot gas.

SRS airbag system components



CTH17AW256

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Front sub sensor (right-hand side) | 11 Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side) |
| 2 SRS warning light | 12 Curtain shield airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side) |
| 3 Frontal airbag module (driver's side) (two-stage) | 13 Seat belt pretensioner (front passenger's side) |
| 4 Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicator (center of instrument panel) | 14 Satellite safing sensor (under the center of the rear seats) |
| 5 Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side) (two-stage) | 15 Front passenger's occupant classification system sensor |
| 6 Front passenger's occupant detection control module | 16 Seat belt buckle switch (front passenger's side) |
| 7 Door impact sensor (right-hand side) | 17 Seat belt pretensioner (driver's side) |
| 8 Curtain shield airbag module (right-hand side) | 18 Curtain shield airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side) |
| 9 Airbag wiring | |
| 10 Side airbag module (front passenger's side) | |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 19 Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side) | 22 Airbag control module (including impact sensors) |
| 20 Side airbag module (driver's side) | 23 Front sub sensor (left-hand side) |
| 21 Door impact sensor (left-hand side) | 24 Curtain shield airbag module (left-hand side) |

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant detection control module etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag control module. The airbag control module consists of an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe front or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

Scion advanced frontal airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a Scion advanced frontal airbag system that complies with the new advanced frontal airbag requirements in the amended Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) No. 208.

The Scion advanced frontal airbag system automatically determines the deployment force of the driver's SRS frontal airbag at the time of deployment as well as whether or not to activate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag and, if activated, the deployment force of the SRS frontal airbag at the time of deployment.

Your vehicle has warning labels on the driver's and front passenger's sun visors beginning with the phrase "EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS" and a tag attached to the glove box lid beginning with the phrase "Even with Advanced Air Bags". Make sure that you carefully read the instructions on the warning labels and tag.

Always wear your seat belt. The Scion advanced frontal airbag system is a supplemental restraint system and must be used in combination with a seat belt. All occupants should wear a seat belt or be seated in an appropriate child restraint system.

The driver's SRS frontal airbag is stowed in the center portion of the steering wheel. The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is stowed near the top of the dashboard under an "SRS AIRBAG" mark.

In a moderate to severe frontal collision, the following components deploy.

- SRS frontal airbag for driver
- SRS frontal airbag for front passenger

These components supplement the seat belts by reducing the impact to the occupant's head and chest.

■ Driver's SRS frontal airbag

The driver's SRS frontal airbag uses a dual stage inflator. The inflator operates in different ways depending on the severity of impact.

Have the system inspected by your Scion dealer immediately if the SRS warning light illuminates.

NOTE

The driver's SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are not controlled by the Scion advanced frontal airbag system.

■ Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag uses a dual stage inflator. The inflator operates in different ways depending on the severity of impact.

The occupant classification system sensor is installed under the seat upholstery and monitors the physique and posture of the front passenger. Using this information, the occupant classification system determines whether the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag should be deployed or not.

The occupant classification system may not inflate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even when the driver's SRS frontal airbag deploys. This is normal. In this case, although the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag does not operate, the front passenger's seat belt pretensioner operates with the driver's seat belt pretensioner. For details about the seat belt pretensioner, refer to "Seat belt pretensioners". (→P. 55)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the Scion advanced frontal airbag system from functioning correctly or cause the system to fail.

- Do not apply any strong impact to the front passenger's seat.
- Do not spill liquid on the front passenger's seat. If liquid is spilled, wipe it off immediately.
- Do not remove or disassemble the front passenger's seat.
- Do not install any accessory (such as an audio amplifier) other than a genuine Scion accessory under the front passenger's seat.
- Do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat.
- Do not place a magnet near the seat belt buckle.

If the seat belt buckle switch and/or front passenger's occupant classification system have failed, the SRS warning light will illuminate. Have the system inspected by your Scion dealer immediately if the SRS warning light illuminates.

If your vehicle has sustained impact, this may affect the proper function of the Scion advanced frontal airbag system. Have your vehicle inspected at your Scion dealer. Do not use the front passenger's seat while driving the vehicle to your Scion dealer.

NOTE

The front passenger's SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are not controlled by the Scion advanced frontal airbag system.

■ Passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators

→P. 117

■ Occupant classification system

The occupant classification system sensor is installed under the seat upholstery and monitors the physique and posture of the front passenger. Using this information, the occupant classification system determines whether the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag should be deployed or not.

If the front passenger's seat cushion is wet, this may adversely affect the ability of the system to determine deployment. If the seat cushion is wet, the front passenger should stop sitting on the front passenger's seat. Wipe off liquid from the seat immediately, let the seat dry naturally and then check the SRS warning light as follows.

- If the SRS warning light illuminates, keep the seat dry until the warning light turns off. If the SRS warning light stays on even when the seat has dried, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat and have the system checked by your Scion dealer.
- If the SRS warning light does not illuminate, check that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators work properly. If the indicators do not work properly, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat and have the system checked by your Scion dealer.

Also, if luggage or electronic devices are placed on the front passenger's seat, this may adversely affect the ability of the system to determine deployment. This may prevent the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators from working properly. Check that the indicators work properly. When the OFF indicator turns off and the ON indicator illuminates, the front passenger's frontal airbag may deploy during a collision. Remove luggage and electronic devices from the front passenger's seat.

NOTE

This device complies with Part 18 of the FCC Rules. This device may cause interference. If this device causes interference, consult the nearest Scion dealer. Also, for maintenance of the system, consult the nearest Scion dealer.

■ Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is not activated

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will not be activated when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat:

- The seat is empty.
- The seat is equipped with an appropriate child restraint system and an infant is restrained in it.
- The occupant changed their posture after the occupant load is judged.
- The front passenger's occupant classification system is malfunctioning.

CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an infant in an appropriate child restraint system, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may interfere with the proper operation of the occupant classification system, activating the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even though that seat is occupied by the infant in the child restraint system.

- Do not place any article (including electronic devices) on the seat other than the infant in the child restraint system.
- Do not place more than one infant in the child restraint system.

■ **If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat)**

Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off if the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat). Remove the child restraint system from the seat. By referring to the child restraint manufacturer's recommendations as well as the child restraint system installation procedures in "Child restraint systems" (→P. 125), correctly install the child restraint system. Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode and make sure that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator turns off and the OFF indicator illuminates.

If still the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off, take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the child restraint system and the child occupant.
- Ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger's seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth.

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off after taking relevant corrective actions described above, relocate the child restraint system to the rear seat and immediately contact your Scion dealer for an inspection.

NOTE

When a child who has outgrown a child restraint system or a small adult is seated in the front passenger's seat, the Scion advanced frontal airbag system may or may not activate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag depending on the occupant's seating posture. The child should always wear the seat belt when sitting in the seat irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated. If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off), take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the occupant.

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off despite the fact that the actions noted above have been taken, seat the child/small adult in the rear seat and immediately contact your Scion dealer for an inspection. Even if the system has passed the dealer inspection, it is recommended that on subsequent trips the child/small adult always take the rear seat.

Children who have outgrown a child restraint system should always wear the seat belt irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated.

■ **Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will be activated for deployment upon impact when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat.

- When the seat is occupied by an adult.
- When a certain item(s) (e.g. jug of water) is placed on the seat.

■ **If the passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator illuminates and the ON indicator turns off even when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult**

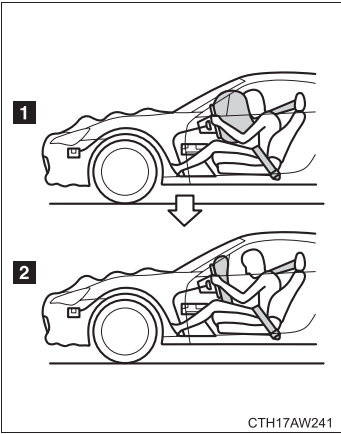
This can be caused by the adult incorrectly sitting in the front passenger's seat. Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off. Ask the front passenger to set the seatback to the upright position, sit up straight in the center of the seat cushion, correctly fasten the seat belt, position his/her legs out forward, and adjust the seat to the rearmost position. Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode. If the OFF indicator remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, take the following actions.

- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
- Make sure that the front passenger does not use a blanket, seat cushion, seat cover, seat heater or massager, etc.
- If wearing excessive layers of clothing, the front passenger should remove any unnecessary items before sitting in the front passenger's seat, or should sit in a rear seat.
- Next, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode and wait 6 seconds to allow the system to complete self-checking. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. Now, the ON indicator should illuminate while the OFF indicator remains off.

If the OFF indicator still remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, ask the occupant to move to the rear seat and immediately contact your Scion dealer for an inspection.

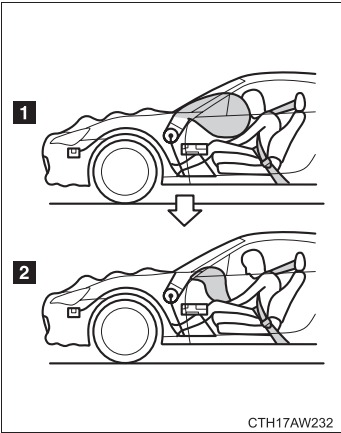
■ Operation

Driver's side



- 1** SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.
- 2** After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.

Passenger's side



- 1** SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.
- 2** After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.

The SRS airbag can function only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The Scion advanced frontal airbag system is designed to determine the activation or deactivation condition of the front passenger’s SRS frontal airbag depending on the characteristic of the item(s) or person on the front passenger’s seat monitored by the front passenger’s occupant classification system sensor. For this reason, only the driver’s SRS frontal airbag may deploy in the event of a collision, but this does not mean failure of the system.

If the front sub sensors and the impact sensors in the airbag control module detect a predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the control module sends signals to the airbag module(s) (only driver’s module or both driver’s and front passenger’s modules) instructing the module(s) to inflate the SRS frontal airbag(s).

The driver’s and front passenger’s SRS frontal airbags use dual stage inflators. The two inflators of each airbag are triggered either sequentially or simultaneously, depending on the severity of impact, in the case of the driver’s SRS frontal airbag and depending on the severity of impact and the characteristic of the item(s) or person on the seat in the case of the front passenger’s SRS frontal airbag.

After deployment, the SRS airbag immediately starts to deflate so that the driver’s vision is not obstructed. The time required from detecting impact to the deflation of the SRS airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

Both when only the driver’s SRS frontal airbag deploys and the driver’s and front passenger’s SRS frontal airbags deploy, the driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt pretensioners operate at the same time.

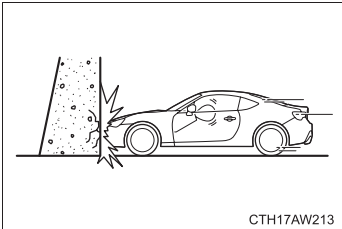
Although it is highly unlikely that the SRS airbag would activate in a non-accident situation, should it occur, the SRS airbag will deflate quickly, not obscuring vision and will not interfere with the driver’s ability to maintain control of the vehicle.

When the SRS airbag deploys, a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

The driver's SRS frontal airbag and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag are designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision. They are not designed to deploy in most lesser frontal impacts because the necessary protection can be achieved by the seat belt alone. Also, they are not designed to deploy in most side or rear impacts or in most roll-over accidents because deployment of only the driver's SRS frontal airbag or both driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags would not help the occupant in those situations. The driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags are designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

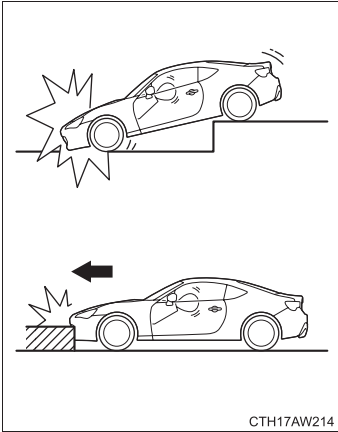
SRS airbag deployment depends on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

■ **Example of accident in which the driver's/driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s) will most likely deploy**



A head-on collision against a thick concrete wall at a vehicle speeds of 12 to 19 mph (20 to 30 km/h) or higher activates only the driver's SRS frontal airbag or both driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags. The airbag(s) will also be activated when the vehicle is exposed to a frontal impact similar in fashion and magnitude to the collision described above.

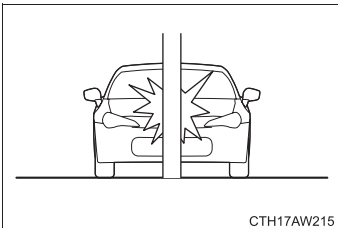
■ **Examples of the types of accidents in which it is possible that the driver's/driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s) will deploy**



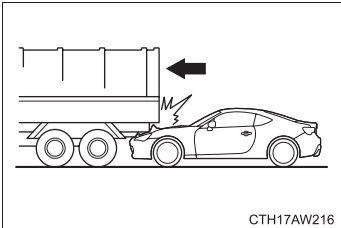
Only the driver's SRS frontal airbag or both driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags may be activated when the vehicle sustains a hard impact in the undercarriage area from the road surface (such as when the vehicle plunges into a deep ditch, is severely impacted or knocked hard against an obstacle on the road such as a curb).

■ **Examples of the types of accidents in which deployment of the driver's/driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s) is unlikely to occur**

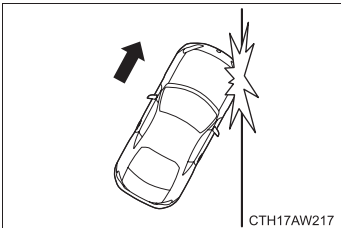
There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require deployment of driver's/driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s). In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the driver's/driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s) may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.



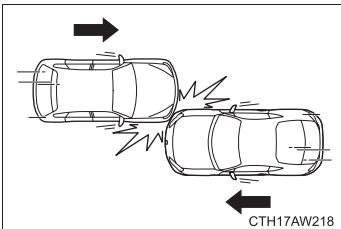
The vehicle strikes an object, such as a telephone pole or sign pole.



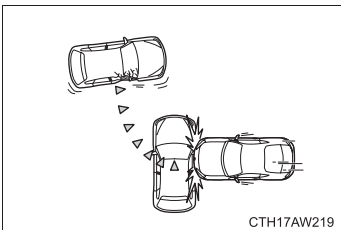
The vehicle slides under the load bed of a truck.



The vehicle sustains an oblique offset frontal impact.

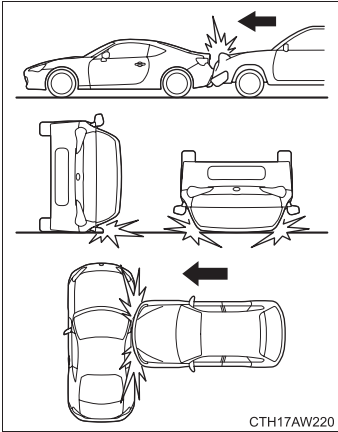


The vehicle sustains an offset frontal collision.

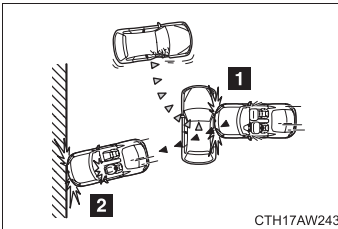


The vehicle strikes an object that can move or deform, such as a parked vehicle.

■ Examples of the types of accidents in which the driver's/driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s) will basically not deploy



The driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags are designed not to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is struck from the side or from behind, or if it rolls onto its side or roof, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



1 First impact

2 Second impact

In an accident where the vehicle is impacted more than once, the driver's and/or front passenger's SRS frontal airbag(s) will deploy only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double collision, first with another vehicle, then against a concrete wall in immediate succession, once either or both of the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags is/are activated on the first impact, it/they will not be activated on the second impact.

 CAUTION

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy**

Do not touch the SRS airbag system components around the steering wheel and dashboard with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.

■ **Child restraint precautions**

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT EVEN IF THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SRS FRONTAL AIRBAG IS DEACTIVATED. Be sure to install it in the REAR seat in a correct manner. Also, it is strongly recommended that any forward facing child seat or booster seat be installed in the REAR seat, and that even children who have outgrown a child restraint system be also seated in the REAR seat. This is because children sitting in the front passenger's seat may be killed or severely injured should the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploy. REAR seats are the safest place for children.

SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag

The SRS side airbag is stored in the door side of each front seat seatback, which bears an “SRS AIRBAG” label.

In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS side airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the door panel and supplements the seat belt by reducing the impact on the occupant’s chest and waist. The SRS side airbag operates only for front seat occupants.

The SRS curtain shield airbag on each side of the cabin is stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat). An “SRS AIRBAG” mark is located at the top of each front and rear pillar.

In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS curtain shield airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the side window and supplements the seat belt by reducing the impact on the occupant’s head.

■ Operation



The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag can function only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

The driver’s and front passenger’s SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags deploy independently of each other since each has its own impact sensor. Therefore, they may not both deploy in the same accident. Also, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deploys independently of the driver’s and front passenger’s SRS front airbags in the steering wheel and instrument panel.

An impact sensor, which senses impact force, is located in each of the left and right center pillars, doors and rear wheel houses. Another impact sensor, which also senses impact force, is located under the center of the rear seats.

If the impact sensor that is located under the center of the rear seats and one of the center pillar impact sensors or door impact sensors together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes both the SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag on the impacted side to inflate regardless of whether the rear wheel house impact sensor on the same side senses an impact.

If the impact sensor that is located under the center of the rear seats and one of the rear wheel house impact sensors together sense an impact force above a predetermined level, the control module causes only the SRS curtain shield airbag on the impacted side to inflate.

After the deployment, the SRS side airbag immediately starts to deflate. The time required from detection of an impact to deflation of an SRS side airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

The SRS curtain shield airbag remains inflated for a while following deployment then slowly deflates.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deploy even when no one occupies the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.

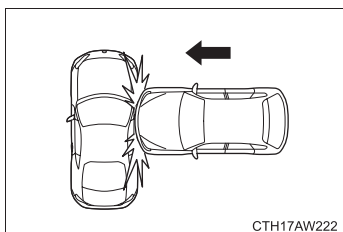
When the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deploy, a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe side impact collision. They are not designed to deploy in most lesser side impact. Also, they are not designed to deploy in most frontal or most rear impacts because SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deployment would not help the occupant in those situations.

Each SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deployment depend on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a side impact collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

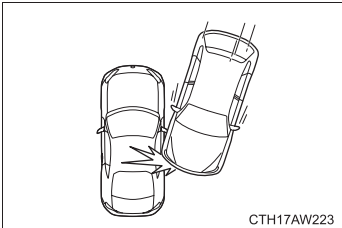
■ **Example of the type of accident in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag will most likely deploy**



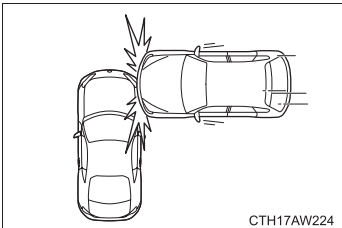
A severe side impact near the front seat activates the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag.

■ **Examples of the types of accidents in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are unlikely to deploy**

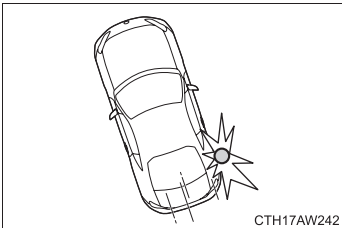
There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.



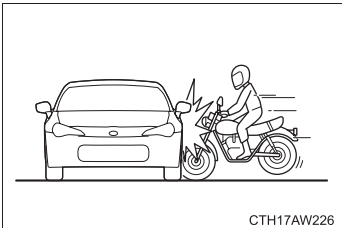
The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.



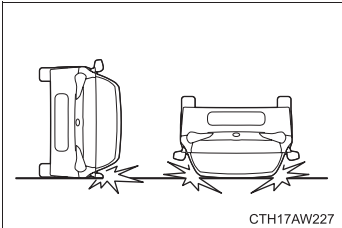
The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.



The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.

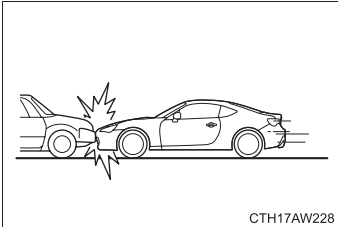


The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.



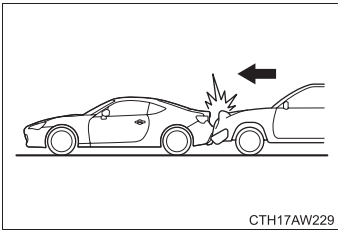
The vehicle rolls onto its side or roof.

■ Examples of the types of accidents in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag will basically not deploy



CTH17AW228

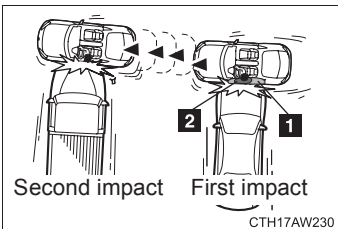
The vehicle is involved in frontal collision with another vehicle (moving or stationary).



CTH17AW229

The vehicle is struck from behind.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are not designed to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is involved in a frontal collision or is struck from behind. Examples of such accidents are illustrated.



CTH17AW230

1 SRS curtain shield airbag

2 SRS side airbag

In an accident where the vehicle is struck from the side more than once, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag deploy only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double side impact collision, first with one vehicle and immediately followed by another from the same direction, once the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are activated on the first impact, they will not be activated on the second.

CAUTION

■ If the SRS airbags deploy

Do not touch the SRS side airbag system components around the front seat seatback with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.

After deployment, do not touch any part of the SRS curtain shield airbag system (from the front pillar to the part of the roof side over the rear seat). Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.

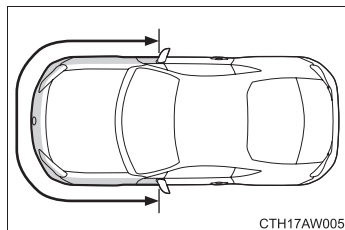
■ SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag precautions

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbag are designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seat belt. They do not do away with the need to fasten seat belts. It is also important to wear your seat belt to help avoid injuries that can result when an occupant is not seated in a proper upright position.

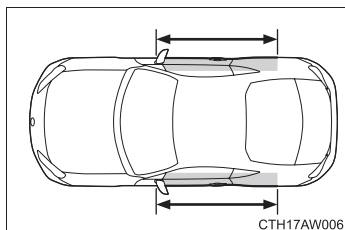
■ When to contact your Scion dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Scion dealer as soon as possible.

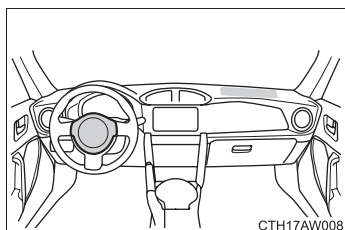
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



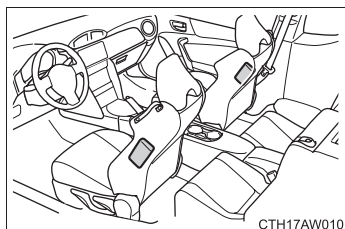
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



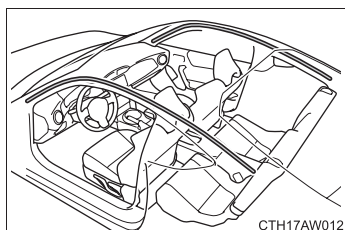
- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel or dashboard is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

 CAUTION

■ **SRS airbag precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.

The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (“NHTSA”) advises:

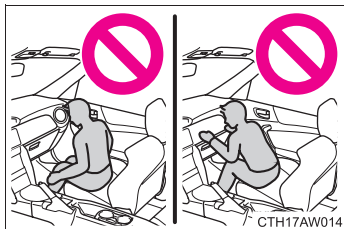
Since the risk zone for the driver’s airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

! CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

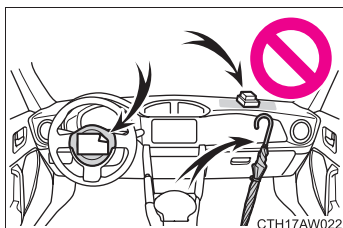
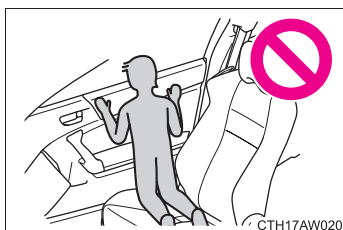
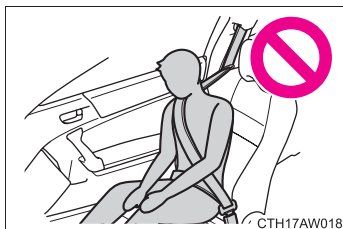
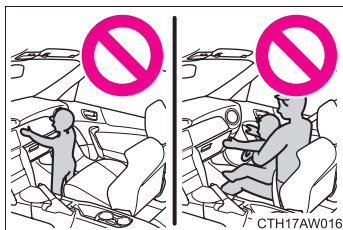
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Scion strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 125)



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

! CAUTION

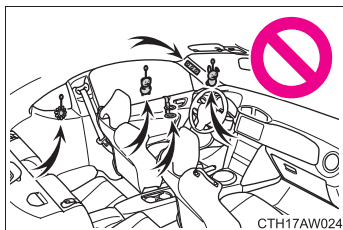
■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.
- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard or steering wheel pad. These items can become projectiles when SRS driver and front passenger airbags deploy.

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield glass, side door glass, rear quarter glass, front and rear pillar or roof side rail.

- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components (→P. 87).
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Scion dealer.

 CAUTION

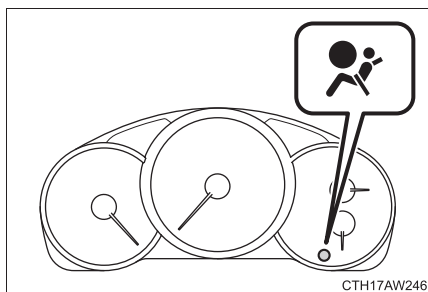
■ **Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components**

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Scion dealer.

The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment.
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows, winches.
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system.
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios and CD players.
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.

SRS airbag system monitors



A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the SRS airbag system (including front seat belt pretensioners) while the vehicle is being driven. The SRS warning light will show normal system operation by illuminating for approximately 6 seconds when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

The following components are monitored by the indicator:

- Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
- Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
- Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
- Frontal airbag module (driver’s side)
- Frontal airbag module (front passenger’s side)
- Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)
- Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)
- Door impact sensor (right-hand side)
- Door impact sensor (left-hand side)
- Side airbag module (driver’s side)
- Side airbag module (front passenger’s side)
- Curtain shield airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)
- Curtain shield airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)
- Curtain shield airbag module (right-hand side)

- Curtain shield airbag module (left-hand side)
- Satellite safing sensor (under the center of the rear seats)
- Seat belt pretensioner (driver's side)
- Seat belt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
- Seat belt buckle switch (front passenger's side)
- Front passenger's occupant classification system sensor
- Front passenger's occupant detection control module
- Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicator
- All related wiring

CAUTION

■ SRS warning light

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seat belt pretensioners, SRS airbag system and/or front passenger occupant classification system. Immediately take your vehicle to your nearest Scion dealer to have the system checked. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seat belt pretensioners, SRS airbag and/or front passenger occupant classification system will not operate properly in the event of a collision, which may increase the risk of death or serious injury.

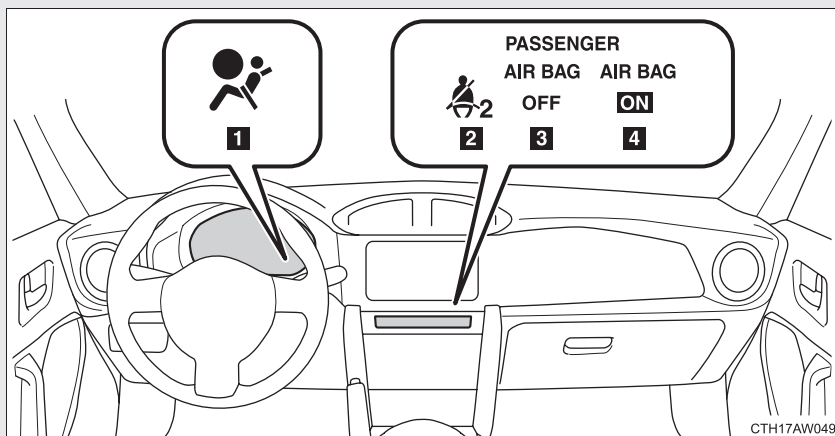
- Flashing or flickering of the warning light
- No illumination of the warning light when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is first turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- Continuous illumination of the warning light
- Illumination of the warning light while driving

1-7. Safety information

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. Using the sensors installed under the seat cover, the system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the frontal airbag for front passenger seat. The occupant classification system may not inflate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even when the driver's SRS frontal airbag deploys. This is not a malfunction. If the seat belt buckle switch and/or front passenger's occupant classification system have failed, the SRS warning light will illuminate. Have the system inspected by your Scion dealer immediately if the SRS warning light illuminates.

If your vehicle has sustained impact, this may affect the proper function of the Scion advanced frontal airbag system. Immediately contact your Scion dealer and have your vehicle inspected. Do not use the front passenger seat while driving to your Scion dealer.



- 1 SRS warning light
- 2 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
- 3 "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
- 4 "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

The front passenger’s frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators show you the status of the front passenger’s SRS frontal airbag. When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, both the ON and OFF indicators illuminate while the system is checked, after which both indicators turn off.

After that, one of the indicators illuminates depending on the status of the front passenger’s SRS frontal airbag determined by the Scion advanced frontal airbag monitoring system.

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system^{*1}

■ Adult^{*2}

Indicator/ warning light	“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights	“AIR BAG ON”
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light	Flashing ^{*3}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	On
	Front side airbag ^{*4}	
	Front curtain shield airbag ^{*4}	
	Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner ^{*4}	

■ Child restraint system with infant^{*6, *7, *8}

Indicator/ warning light	“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights	“AIR BAG OFF” ^{*9}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Off
	Front side airbag ^{*4}	On
	Front curtain shield airbag ^{*4}	
	Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner ^{*4}	

■ Child^{*5, *7}

Indicator/ warning light	“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights	“AIR BAG OFF” or “AIR BAG ON” ^{*5}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light	Off or flashing ^{*3, *5}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Off or on ^{*5}
	Front side airbag ^{*4}	On
	Front curtain shield airbag ^{*4}	
	Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner ^{*4}	

1
Before driving

■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights	“AIR BAG OFF”
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Off
	Front side airbag ^{*4}	On
	Front curtain shield airbag ^{*4}	
	Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner ^{*4}	

■ There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	“AIR BAG ON” and “AIR BAG OFF” indicator lights	“AIR BAG OFF”
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Off
	Front side airbag ^{*4}	On
	Front curtain shield airbag ^{*4}	
	Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner ^{*4}	

- *1: The occupant classification system does not operate during self-checking.
- *2: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.
- *3: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- *4: The front passenger's SRS side airbag, SRS curtain shield airbag and seat belt pretensioner are not controlled by the occupant classification system.
- *5: For some children, child in seat, child in booster seat or child in convertible seat, the system may not recognize him/her as a child. Factors which may affect this can be the physique or posture.
Children who have outgrown a child restraint system should always wear the seat belt when sitting in the seat irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated.
- *6: When a child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat, do not place any article on the seat other than the child occupant and a child restraint system.
Failure to do so may prevent the front passenger occupant classification system from functioning correctly or cause the system to fail.
- *7: Do not place more than one child on the front passenger seat.
Failure to do so may prevent the front passenger occupant classification system from functioning correctly.
- *8: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. See the caution that follows regarding installation of a child restraint system. (→P. 129)
- *9: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 129)

If the passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator illuminates and the ON indicator turns off even when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult

This can be caused by an adult incorrectly sitting in the front passenger's seat. Perform the following.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2 Ask the front passenger to set the seatback to the upright position, sit up straight in the center of the seat cushion, correctly wear the seat belt, position his/her legs out forward, and adjust the seat to the rearmost position.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4 If the OFF indicator remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, perform the following.

- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
- Make sure that the front passenger is not using a blanket, seat cushion, seat cover or seat heater, etc.
- If wearing excessive layers of clothing, the front passenger should remove any unnecessary items before sitting in the front passenger seat, or should sit in a rear seat.

STEP 5 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode. After the self-check is performed, the ON indicator should illuminate while the OFF indicator remains off. If the OFF indicator still remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, ask the occupant to move to the rear seat and immediately contact your Scion dealer for an inspection.

If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat)

This can be caused by the child restraint system being installed incorrectly. Perform the following.

- STEP 1** Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
- STEP 2** Remove the child restraint system from the seat. By referring to the child restraint manufacturer's recommendations as well as the child restraint system installation procedure in "child restraint system", correctly reinstall the child restraint system.
- STEP 3** Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode and make sure that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator turns off and the OFF indicator illuminates.
- STEP 4** If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off, perform the following.
 - Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the child restraint system and the child occupant.
 - Ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth.
- STEP 5** If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off after taking the relevant corrective actions described above, relocate the child restraint system to the rear seat and immediately contact your Scion dealer for an inspection.

 CAUTION**■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause the occupant classification system to not function correctly, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Do not apply excessive force to the seat.
- Do not put sharp object(s) on the seat or pierce the seat upholstery.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not spill liquid on the front passenger seat. If liquid is spilled, wipe it off immediately and dry the seat. If the airbag warning light illuminates, dry the seat until the warning light turns off. If the airbag warning light stays on even when the seat has dried, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger seat and have the system checked by your Scion dealer. If the airbag warning light does not illuminate, check that the airbag ON/OFF indicator light works properly. If the indicator light does not work properly, do not allow anyone to sit in the front passenger's seat and have the system inspected by your Scion dealer.
- Do not remove or disassemble the front passenger seat. Also, do not replace or modify the seat upholstery or foam inside the seat.
- Do not install any accessory (such as an audio amplifier) other than a genuine Scion accessory under the front passenger's seat.
- Do not place a magnetized items near the seat belt buckle.

 CAUTION

■ **Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

- Never install a rearward facing child seat in the front passenger's seat even if the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is deactivated. Be sure to install it in the rear seat in a correct manner. Also, it is strongly recommended that any forward facing child seat or booster seat be installed in the rear seat, and that even children who have outgrown a child restraint system be also seated in the rear seat. This is because children sitting in the front passenger's seat may be killed or severely injured should the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploy. Scion believes that the rear seats are the safest place for children
- If luggage or electronic devices are placed on the front passenger seat, the OFF indicator may turn off and the ON indicator may illuminate. If this occurs, the front passenger's airbag may deploy during a collision. If this is not desirable, remove the luggage or electronic devices from the front passenger seat.
- Modifications for persons with disabilities that may affect the front passenger occupant classification system. (U.S. only) Removing, replacing or modifying any parts of the front seats, seat belts, front bumper, front side frame, instrument panel, combination meter, steering wheel, steering column, tires, suspension or floor panel can affect the operation of the Scion front passenger occupant classification system.

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the LATCH anchors or the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.

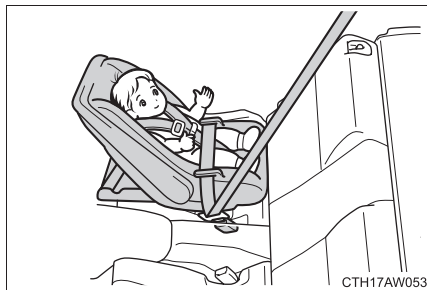
General installation instructions are provided in this manual.

(→P. 129)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

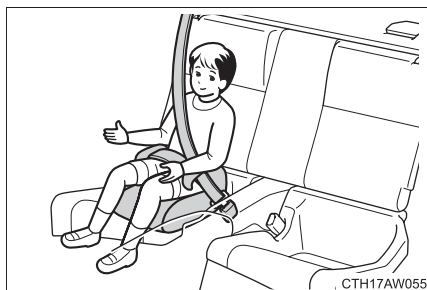
Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat



Forward facing — Convertible seat



Booster seat



■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 54)

 CAUTION**■ Child restraint precautions**

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Scion strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

 CAUTION

■ **Child restraint precautions**

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

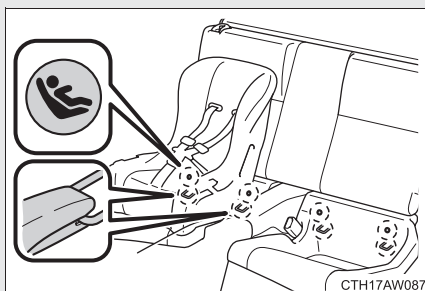
■ **When the child restraint system is not in use**

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Installing child restraints

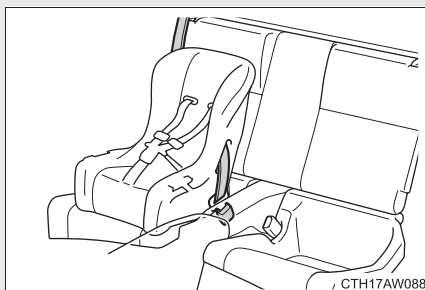
Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the rear seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.

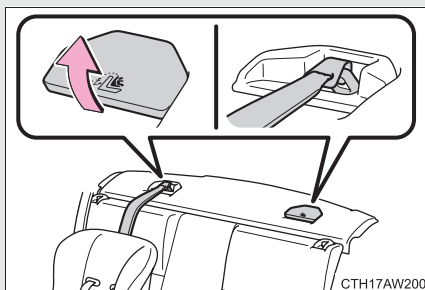


Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for both rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 54)

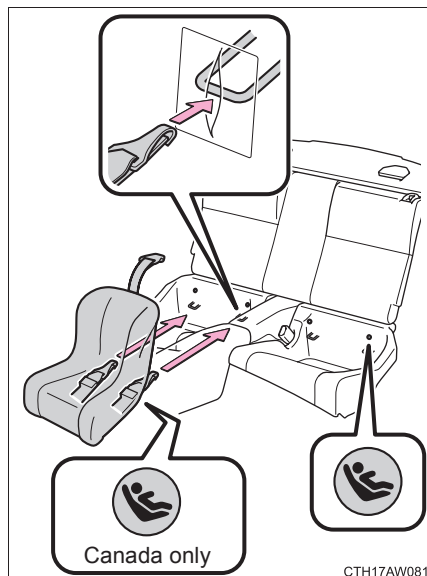


Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for both rear seats.

Installation with LATCH system

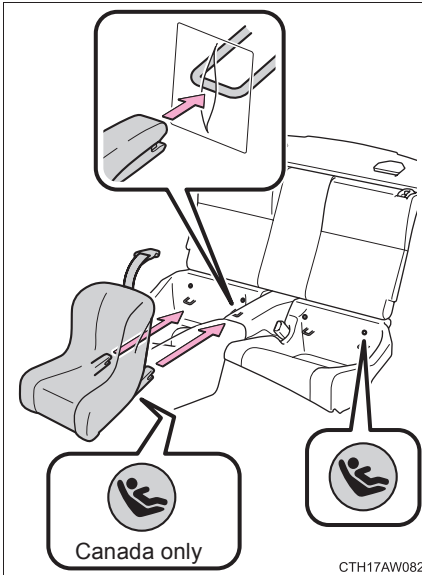
Type A



STEP 1 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 2 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchors.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Type B

STEP 1 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 2 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchors.

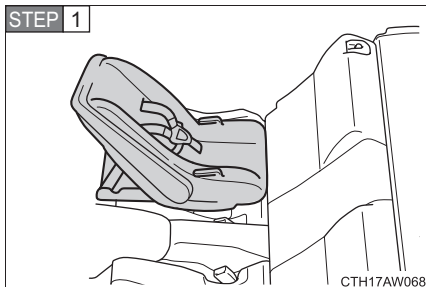
For owners in Canada:

The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

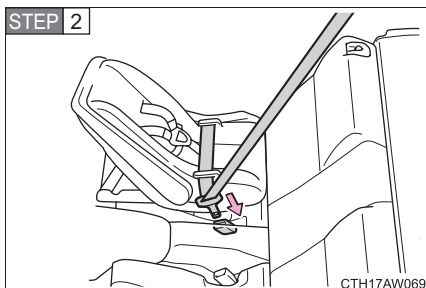
■ Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

STEP 1



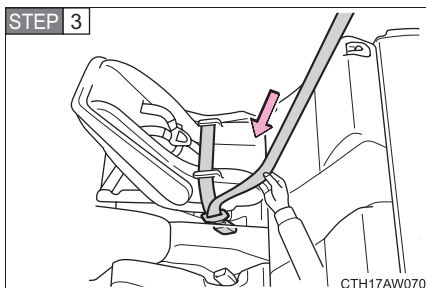
Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2

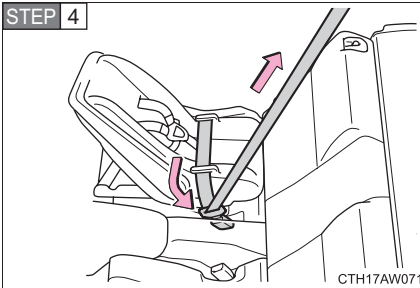


Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



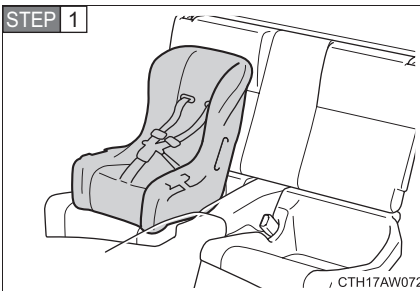
Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.



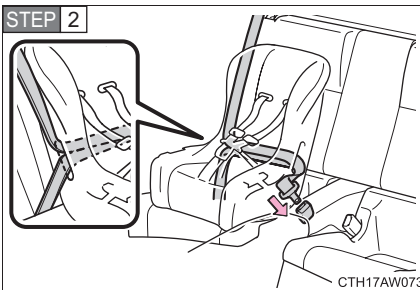
While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

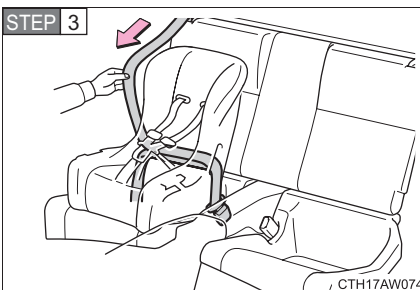
■ Forward facing — Convertible seat



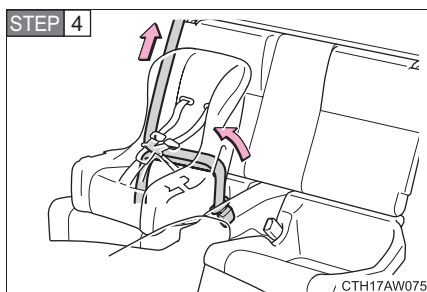
Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

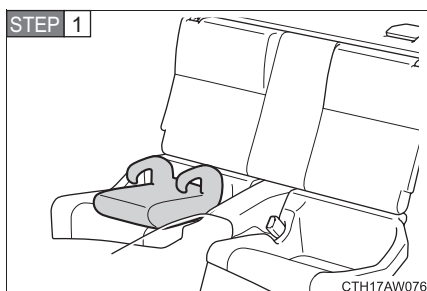


While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

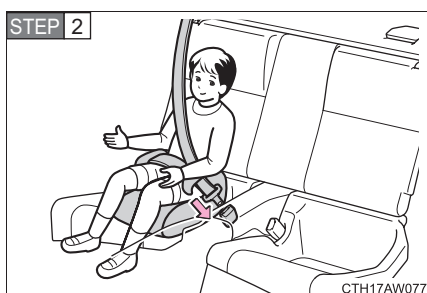
After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 5 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 135)

■ Booster seat



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

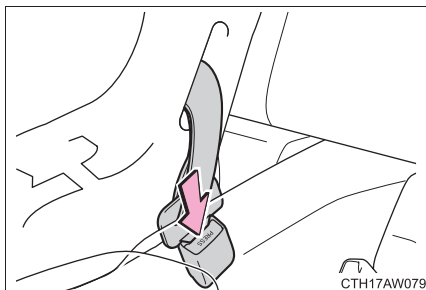


Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is as low as possible.

(→P. 54)

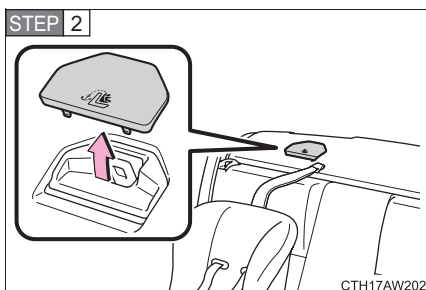
Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

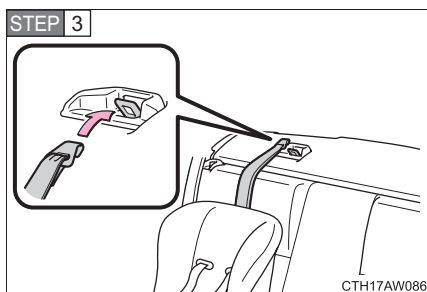
Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

STEP 1 Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or the LATCH anchors.



Remove the anchor bracket cover.

Store the removed cover in a safe place.



Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.

■ **When installing a child restraint system with LATCH anchors and a top tether strap**

Depending on the child restraint system's size and shape, if the child restraint system is installed to the LATCH anchors first, it may not be possible to attach the top tether strap to the anchor bracket.

In that case, first temporarily attach the top tether strap to the anchor bracket, install the child restraint system using the lower anchors and then tighten the top tether strap.

■ **Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages**

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

CAUTION

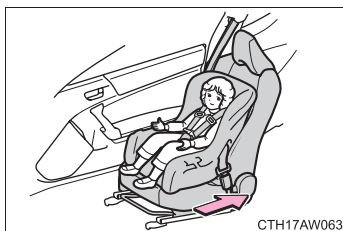
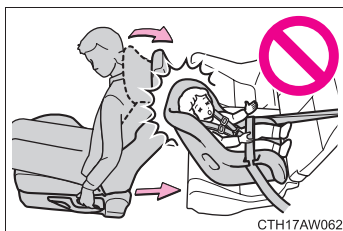
When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only. This could cause injury or discomfort to the child. (→P. 56)

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Only put a forward facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

 CAUTION

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ **To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors**

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerve or an accident.

When driving

2

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle.....	140
Engine (ignition) switch.....	153
Automatic transmission.....	162
Manual Transmission.....	169
Turn signal lever	172
Parking brake.....	173
Horn	174

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters	175
Indicators and warning lights	179
Multi-information display.....	183

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch.....	188
Windshield wipers and washer	193

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control.....	196
Driving assist systems	201

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage	207
Vehicle load limits	211
Winter driving tips	212
Trailer towing	216
Dinghy towing	217

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

■ Starting the engine

→P. 153

■ Driving

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D.
(→P. 162)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 173)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

STEP 1 While depressing the clutch pedal, shift the shift lever to 1.
(→P. 169)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 173)

STEP 3 Gradually release the clutch pedal. At the same time, gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 162)

Vehicles with a manual transmission

STEP 1 While depressing the clutch pedal, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to N. (→P. 169)

■ Parking the vehicle

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

- STEP 1** With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.
- STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 162)
- STEP 3** Set the parking brake. (→P. 173)
- STEP 4** Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to stop the engine.
- STEP 5** Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.
If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

- STEP 1** While depressing the clutch pedal, depress the brake pedal.
- STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to N. (→P. 169)
- STEP 3** Set the parking brake. (→P. 173)
- STEP 4** Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to stop the engine.
- STEP 5** Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.
If parking on a hill, shift the shift lever to 1 or R and block the wheels as needed.

Starting off on a steep uphill

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

- STEP 1** Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.
- STEP 2** Gently depress the accelerator pedal.
- STEP 3** Release the parking brake.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

- STEP 1** With the parking brake firmly set and the clutch pedal fully depressed, shift the shift lever to 1.
- STEP 2** Lightly depress the accelerator pedal at the same time as gradually releasing the clutch pedal.
- STEP 3** Release the parking brake.

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Engine speed while driving (vehicles with an automatic transmission)

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When driving on curves
- When the brake pedal is firmly depressed

■ New vehicle break-in driving (the first 1000 miles [1600 km])

The performance and long life of your vehicle are dependent on how you handle and care for your vehicle while it is new. Follow these instructions during the first 1000 miles (1600 km):

- Do not allow the engine speed to exceed 4000 rpm except in an emergency.
- Do not drive at one constant engine or vehicle speed for a long time, either fast or slow.
- Avoid starting suddenly and rapid acceleration, except in an emergency.
- Avoid hard braking, except in an emergency.

The same break-in procedures should be applied to an overhauled engine, newly mounted engine or when brake pads or brake linings are replaced with new ones.

■ Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Scion dealer perform the bedding down.

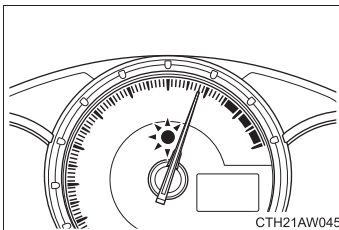
■ After the engine starts

In order to secure a rich exhaust sound when starting the vehicle and environmental performance, air intake and exhaust sounds become loud and vibrations may increase for a little while after the engine starts. This is not a malfunction.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 381)

■ REV indicator



When the set engine speed is reached the REV indicator comes on and a buzzer sounds to inform the driver. (→P. 185)

(When the engine speed enters the red zone, the REV indicator flashes regardless of settings.)

CAUTION

■ When starting the vehicle (vehicles with an automatic transmission)

- Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.
- Firmly depress the brake pedal because engine speed may increase immediately after starting the engine, when the air conditioning system is operating, when turning the steering wheel, etc., thereby causing creeping to become stronger. Apply the parking brake as necessary.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
 - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
 - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
 - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
 - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- On vehicles with an automatic transmission, do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer immediately.

CAUTION

- On vehicles with a manual transmission, do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to D (vehicles with an automatic transmission) or 1 (vehicles with a manual transmission) while the vehicle is moving backward.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- On vehicles with a manual transmission, do not release the clutch pedal too quickly. Doing so may propel the vehicle forward, possibly causing an accident.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 375
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 163, 169)
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents, resulting in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

■ When shifting the shift lever

- On vehicles with an automatic transmission, be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.
- Do not place items in the shift lever's surrounding area. It may cause incorrect operation.
- If the shift boot is pulled out during cleaning, return it to its previous position. If the shift boot is left pulled out, the shift lever may become difficult to operate.

 CAUTION**■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)**

Have your Scion dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.

If the vehicle is in any gear other than P (vehicles with an automatic transmission only) or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.

- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.

If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.

- On vehicles with an automatic transmission, in order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.

- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.

- Avoid revving or racing the engine.

Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
Doing so may result in the following:
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach suction cups to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Suction cups or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P (vehicles with an automatic transmission only), stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

 CAUTION**■ Exhaust gases**

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust system should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Scion dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

CAUTION

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
Have your brakes fixed immediately.

 NOTICE

■ Pre-driving check

Trapping small animals in the cooling fan and belts of the engine may result in a malfunction. Check that no small animal enters the engine compartment and under the vehicle before starting the engine.

■ When driving the vehicle

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not shift gears unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed. After shifting, do not release the clutch pedal abruptly. Doing so may damage the clutch, transmission and gears.
- Observe the following to prevent the clutch from being damaged.
 - Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal while driving.
Doing so may cause clutch trouble.
 - Do not use any gear other than the 1st gear when starting off and moving forward.
Doing so may damage the clutch.
 - Do not use the clutch to hold the vehicle when stopping on an uphill grade.
Doing so may damage the clutch.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R when the vehicle is still moving. Doing so may damage the clutch, transmission and gears.
- Do not release the clutch pedal too quickly. Doing so may damage the transmission.

■ When parking the vehicle (vehicles with an automatic transmission)

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

NOTICE

■ **Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- On vehicles with an automatic transmission, do not race the engine for more than 5 seconds in any position except the N or P position when the brake is applied or when chocks are used in the wheels. This may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.

■ **If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 346)

■ **When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Scion dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes.

■ Starting the engine

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

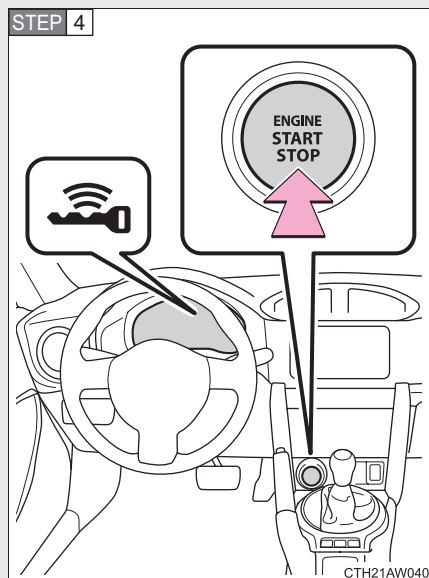
STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

If the shift lever is not set in P, the engine may not be started.
(→P. 162)

STEP 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

The smart key system indicator light (green) will turn on. If the indicator light does not turn on, the engine cannot be started.



Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 10 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.

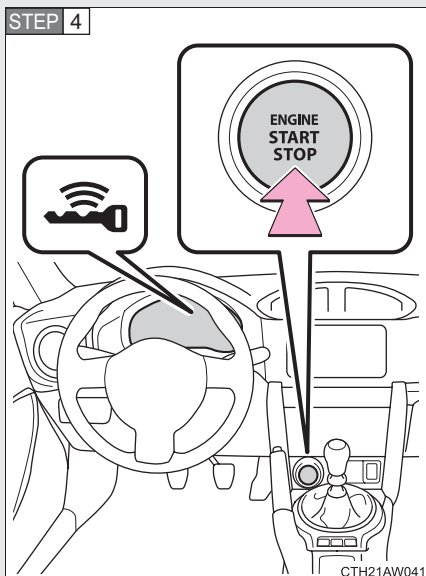
Vehicles with a manual transmission

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in N.

STEP 3 Firmly depress the clutch pedal.

The smart key system indicator light (green) will turn on. If the indicator light does not turn on, the engine cannot be started.



Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 10 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the clutch pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.

■ Stopping the engine

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

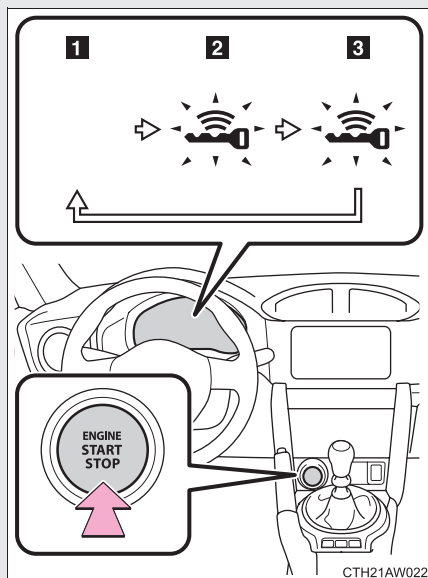
- STEP 1** Stop the vehicle.
- STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to P.
- STEP 3** Set the parking brake. (→P. 173)
- STEP 4** Release the brake pedal.
- STEP 5** Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.
- STEP 6** Check that the smart key system indicator light (green) is off.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

- STEP 1** While depressing the clutch pedal, stop the vehicle.
- STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to N.
- STEP 3** Set the parking brake. (→P. 173)
- STEP 4** Release the clutch pedal.
- STEP 5** Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.
- STEP 6** Check that the smart key system indicator light (green) is off.

■ Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode

Modes can be changed by pressing the “ENGINE START STOP” switch with the brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual transmission) released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

The smart key system indicator light (green) is off.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the power outlet can be used.

The smart key system indicator light (green) flashes slowly.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The smart key system indicator light (green) flashes slowly.

*: Vehicles with an automatic transmission: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P (vehicles with an automatic transmission)

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

- STEP 1** Check that the parking brake is set.
- STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to P.
- STEP 3** Check that the smart key system indicator light (green) flashes slowly and then press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch once.
- STEP 4** Check that the smart key system indicator light (green) is off.

Auto power off function**Vehicles with an automatic transmission**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ Operation of the “ENGINE START STOP” switch

When operating the “ENGINE START STOP” switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 34

■ Conditions affecting operation

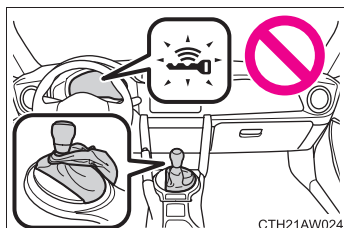
→P. 30

■ Note for the entry function

→P. 31

■ If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 73)
Contact your Scion dealer.

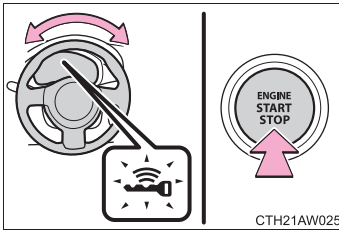


Vehicles with an automatic transmission:
Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P. The smart key system indicator light (green) will flash quickly.

■ Steering lock

After turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the “ENGINE START STOP” switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ When the steering lock cannot be released



The smart key system indicator light (green) will flash quickly.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

Check that the shift lever is set in P. Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ Steering lock motor overheating prevention

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ When the smart key system indicator light flashes in yellow

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer immediately.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

→P. 301

■ If the smart key system has been deactivated in a customized setting

→P. 363

■ Immediately after reconnecting the battery terminals due to replacing the battery and so forth

The engine may not start. If this occurs, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, and start the engine after waiting at least 10 seconds. Idling may be unstable immediately after the engine starts, however, this is not a malfunction.

CAUTION

■ When starting the engine

- Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
- If the smart key system indicator light flashes in green after the engine has started, never drive the vehicle. The steering wheel is still locked, and it may result in an accident.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 375)

However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**NOTICE****■ To prevent battery discharge**

- Do not leave the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If the smart key system indicator light (green) is illuminated, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is off.
- Vehicles with an automatic transmission: Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Scion dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch

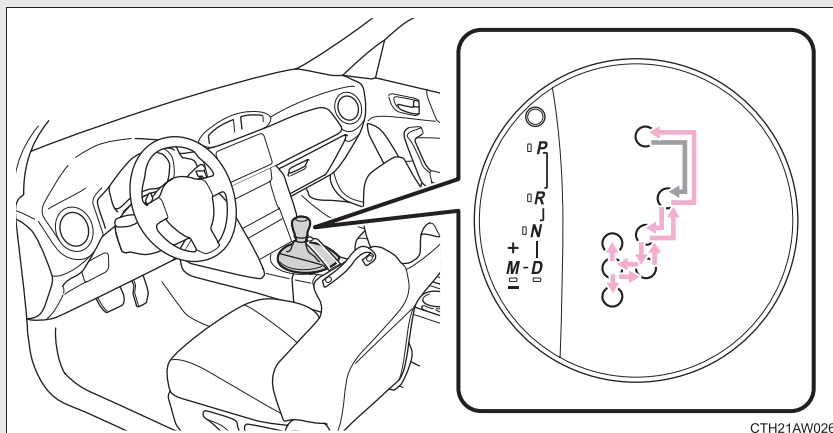
If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Scion dealer immediately.

2-1. Driving procedures

Automatic transmission*

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

■ Shifting the shift lever



CTH21AW026



While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

*: If equipped

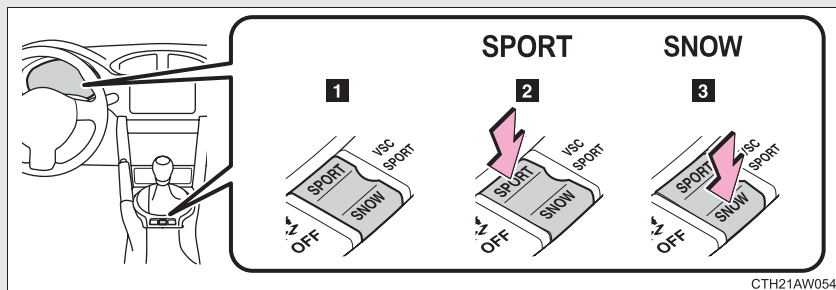
■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Meter display	Function
P		Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R		Reversing
N		Neutral
D		Normal D position driving* (gears between “1” and “6” are automatically selected)
	 (paddle shift switches activated)	Temporary manual mode driving (→P. 167)
M		Manual mode driving (→P. 165)

*: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

■ Selecting a driving mode

By pressing the driving pattern selector switch the following modes can be selected to suit driving and usage conditions:



1 Normal mode

2 Sport mode

The "SPORT" indicator comes on.

Use sport mode for sporty driving or when driving in mountainous regions with lots of curves.

3 Snow mode

The "SNOW" indicator comes on.

Use snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

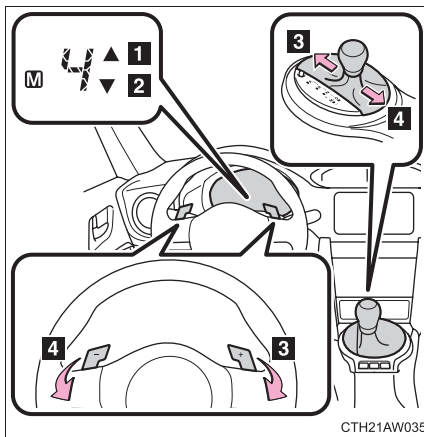
To cancel sport mode or snow mode, press the same side of the switch again.

Manual mode driving

To enter manual mode, shift the shift lever to the M position.

While the upshift/downshift indicator light is illuminated, gears can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.

Even if upshifting operations are performed, if vehicle speed is too low for the requested gear, the gear will not change.



1 Upshift indicator

2 Downshift indicator

3 Upshifting (+)

4 Downshifting (-)

Each time the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated, the gear changes up or down one gear and the selected gear, “1” through “6”, will be set.

The selected gear, from “1” to “6”, and “M” will be displayed on the shift position and shift range indicator.

When in manual mode, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in manual mode, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When engine oil temperature is high and engine speed rises close to the red zone.

■ When moving the shift lever out of P

If the shift lever is pushed sideways before the brake pedal is depressed, shift lever operation may not be possible. Depress the brake pedal before shifting the shift lever out of P.

■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer

If downshifting operations are performed at a vehicle speed by which downshifting is not possible (when downshifting will cause the engine speed to enter the red zone), a buzzer will sound to warn the driver that downshifting cannot be performed.

■ When driving with cruise control activated

Downshifting can be performed even when using cruise control. After downshifting, the set speed continues. (→P. 165, 167)

■ Sport mode

- In sport mode, lower gears are used and gears change at a higher engine speed.
- If sport mode is changed to while the shift lever is in the M position, the "SPORT" indicator will come on but sport mode controls will not be carried out. Shift the shift lever to the D position.
- Sport mode cannot be changed to when driving with cruise control activated.

■ Snow mode

To prevent slipping, 1st gear cannot be selected when in snow mode.

■ Sport mode and snow mode automatic deactivation

In the following situations, the driving mode is automatically deactivated:

- When the engine is turned off after driving in sport mode or snow mode.
- When cruise control is activated while driving in sport mode.

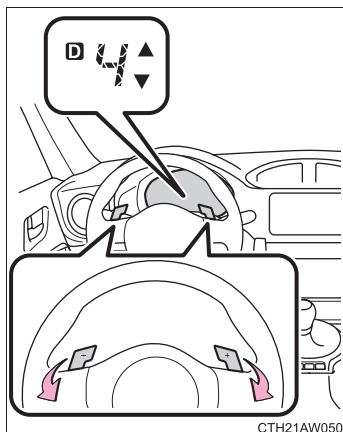
■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 360

■ Automatic gear selection when the vehicle is stopped

When the vehicle is idling at high rpm in order to warm up, and the vehicle is on a slippery road, the transmission may automatically shift to 2nd gear for stopping and starting off.

■ Temporary manual mode driving



Temporary manual mode driving can be changed to by operating the paddle shift switches while the shift lever is in the D position.

When this occurs, the selected gear and “D” are displayed on the shift position and shift range indicator.

(When engine speed rises close to the red zone, upshifting will be automatically performed.)

Temporary manual mode driving will be deactivated and normal D position driving will be returned to in the following situations:

- When driving for longer than the set time (the set time differs according to driving conditions).
- When the vehicle comes to a stop.
- When the accelerator pedal is continually depressed for longer than the set time.
- When the accelerator pedal is fully, or near-fully, depressed.

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the suitable position according to the driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Operating the paddle shift switches or shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)



CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

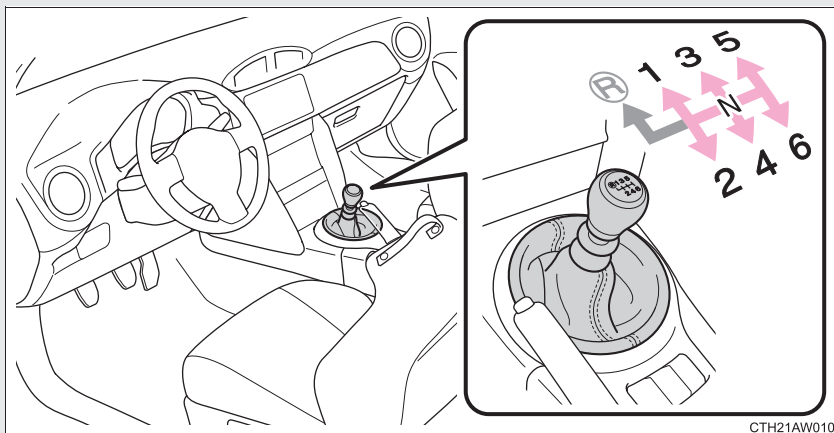
■ To prevent incorrect operation

Do not attach items such as accessories to the paddle shift switches. Doing so may unintentionally move the paddle shift switches.

2-1. Driving procedures

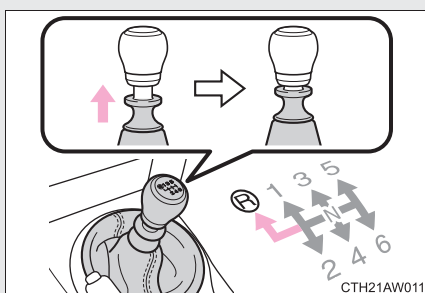
Manual Transmission*

■ Shifting the shift lever



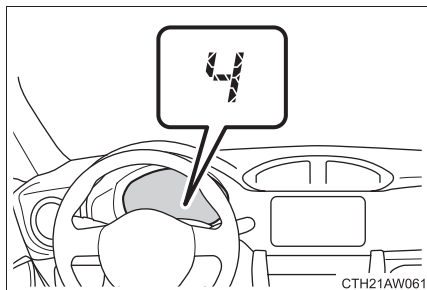
Fully depress the clutch pedal before operating the shift lever, and then release it slowly.

■ Shifting the shift lever to R



Shift the shift lever to R while lifting up the ring section.

Shift position indicator



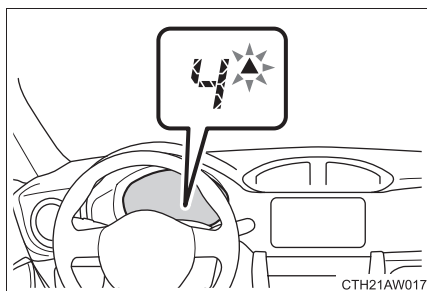
The selected shift position will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The selected shift position will not appear in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is in N.
- When the vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less (except when the shift lever is in R)
- When the clutch pedal is depressed.

The default setting of the indicator is off. The indicator can be turned on/off. (→P. 177)

Shift-up indicator

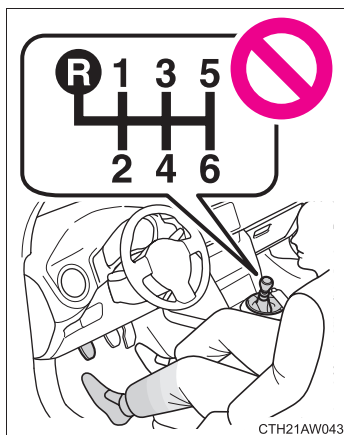


To help enable fuel-efficient driving, the shift-up indicator flashes 3 times to indicate upshift timing.

The default setting of the indicator is off. The indicator can be turned on/off. (→P. 177)

 NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the transmission



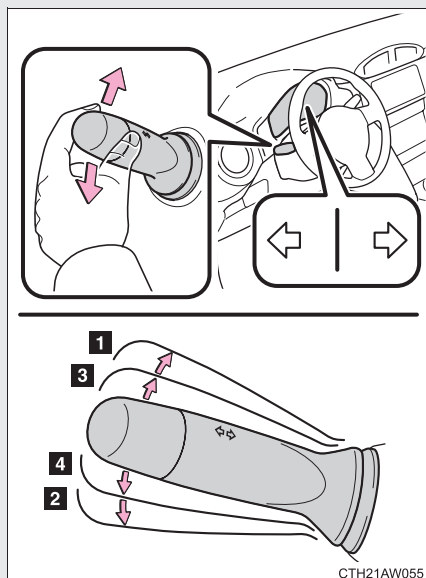
- Do not shift the shift lever without depressing the clutch pedal.

- Do not lift up the ring section except when shifting the lever to R.
- Shift the shift lever to R only when the vehicle is stationary and the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intentions of the driver:



- 1** Right turn
- 2** Left turn
- 3** Lane change to the right (push and hold the lever partway)

The right hand signals will flash until you release the lever.

- 4** Lane change to the left (push and hold the lever partway)

The left hand signals will flash until you release the lever.

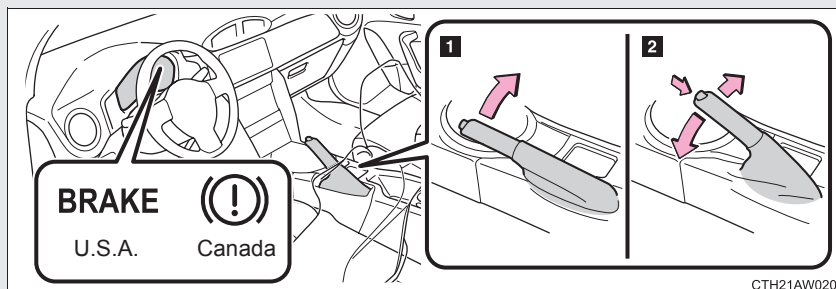
■ Turn signals can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicators flash faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the turn signal lights has not burned out.

Parking brake



- 1** To set the parking brake, fully pull the parking brake lever while depressing the brake pedal.
- 2** To release the parking brake, slightly raise the lever and lower it completely while pressing the button.

■ Usage in winter time

→P. 212

⚠ NOTICE

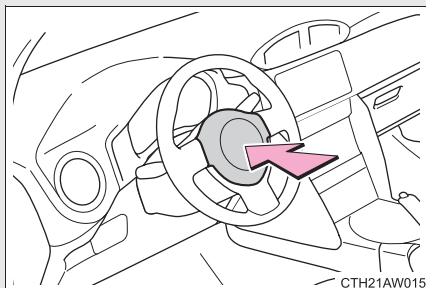
■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

2-1. Driving procedures

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the  mark.

■ After adjusting the steering wheel

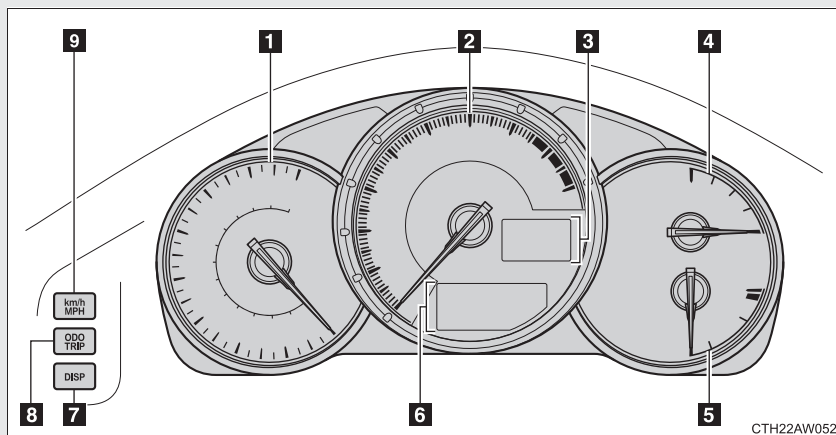
Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.

The horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked.

(→P. 61)

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters



1 Analog Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

2 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

3 Digital Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

4 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

5 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

6 Odometer, trip meter and multi-information display

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Multi-information display: Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data. (→P. 183)

7 "DISP" switch

→P. 184

8 “ODO/TRIP” switch

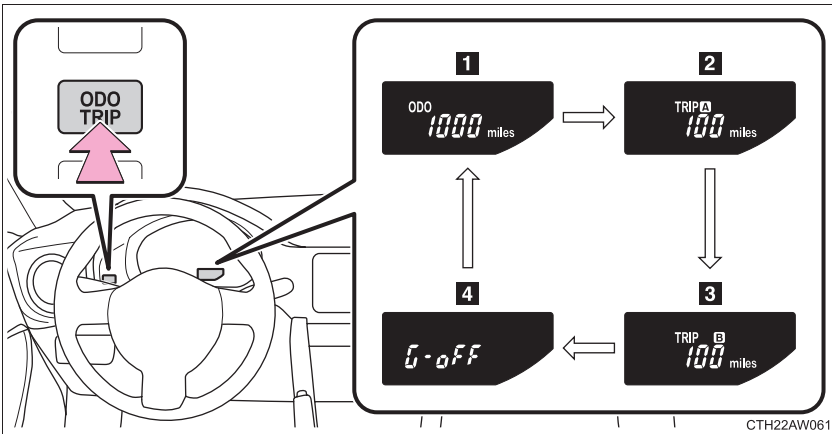
→P. 176

9 “km/h MPH” switch

Each time the switch is pressed, the display inside the meter changes between km/h and MPH.

Switch the display

Each time the “ODO/TRIP” switch is pressed, the display changes as follows.



1 Odometer

2 Trip meter A*¹

3 Trip meter B*¹

4 Setting screen for the shift position indicator and shift-up indicator*² (vehicles with a manual transmission)

*¹: Pressing and holding the “ODO/TRIP” switch will reset the trip meter that is currently displayed.

*²: Only displayed when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

Setting the shift position indicator and shift-up indicator (vehicles with a manual transmission)

Displaying of the shift position indicator and shift-up indicator can be turned on/off.

STEP 1 Press the “ODO/TRIP” switch repeatedly until the setting screen is displayed. (→P. 176)

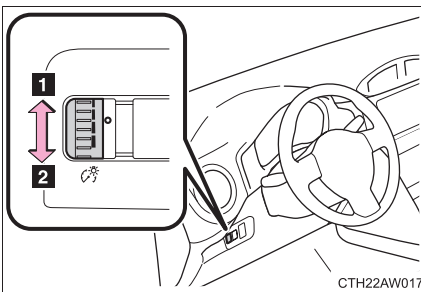
STEP 2 Each time the switch is pressed and held, the display changes between on/off.

“G-on”: Display on

“G-oFF”: Display off

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Brighter

2 Darker

■ The brightness of the instrument panel lights

When the parking lights or the headlights turn on, the instrument panel lights will dim. However, when the instrument panel brightness control dial is turned to the up most position, the instrument panel lights will not dim even when the parking lights or headlights turn on.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

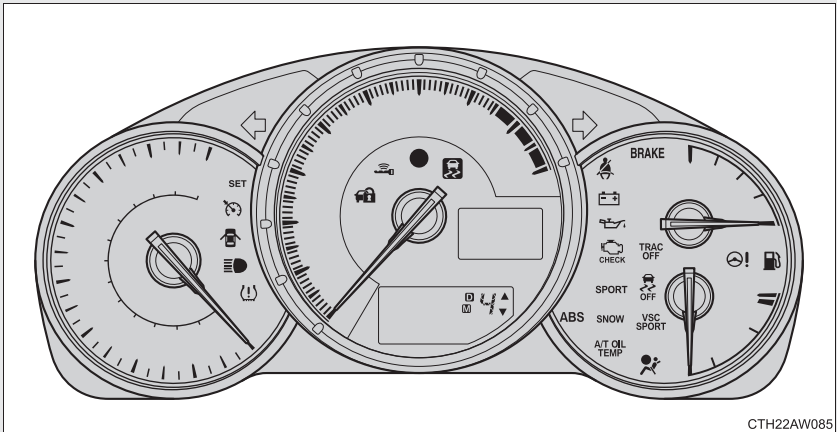
- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 370)

Indicators and warning lights

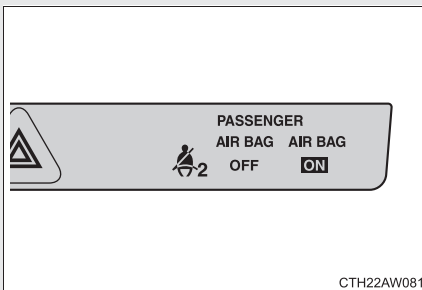
The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all indicators and warning lights illuminated.

Instrument cluster



Center panel



■ Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator
(→P. 172)



Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 189)



Security indicator
(→P. 73, 75)



Smart key system indicator (→P. 153)



Shift position and shift range indicator
(→P. 163)

(Vehicles with an automatic transmission)



Upshift/downshift indicator (→P. 165, 167)

(Vehicles with an automatic transmission)



“SPORT” indicator
(→P. 164)

(Vehicles with an automatic transmission)



“SNOW” indicator
(→P. 164)

(Vehicles with an automatic transmission)



Shift position indicator
(→P. 170)

(Vehicles with a manual transmission)



Shift-up indicator
(→P. 170)

(Vehicles with a manual transmission)



Slip indicator
(→P. 201)



“TRAC OFF” indicator
(→P. 202)



VSC off indicator
(→P. 204)



“VSC SPORT” indicator
(→P. 202)



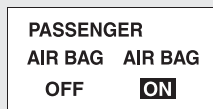
REV indicator
(→P. 143)



Cruise control indicator
(→P. 196)



“SET” indicator
(→P. 196)



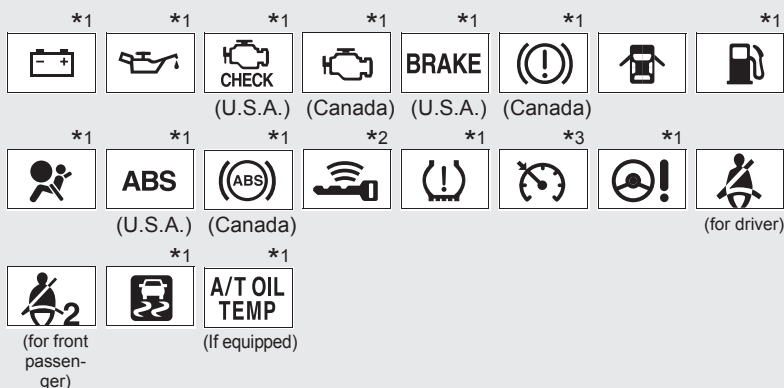
Airbag on-off indicator (→P. 117)

*1: These lights turn on when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 333)



*1: These lights turn on when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer for details.

*2: The light flashes in yellow to indicate a malfunction. The light flashes quickly in green to indicate that the steering lock has not been released.

*3: The light comes on in yellow to indicate a malfunction.

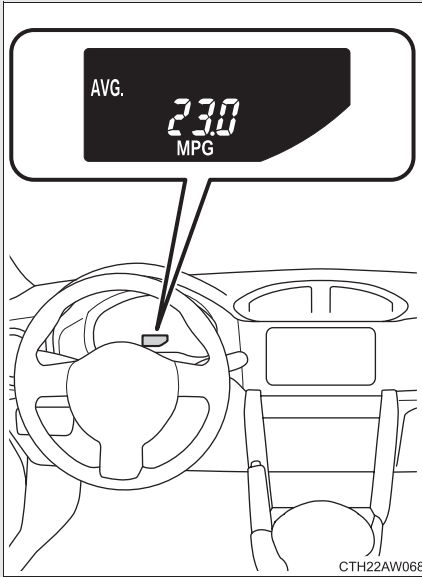
 CAUTION

■ **If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer immediately if this occurs.

Multi-information display

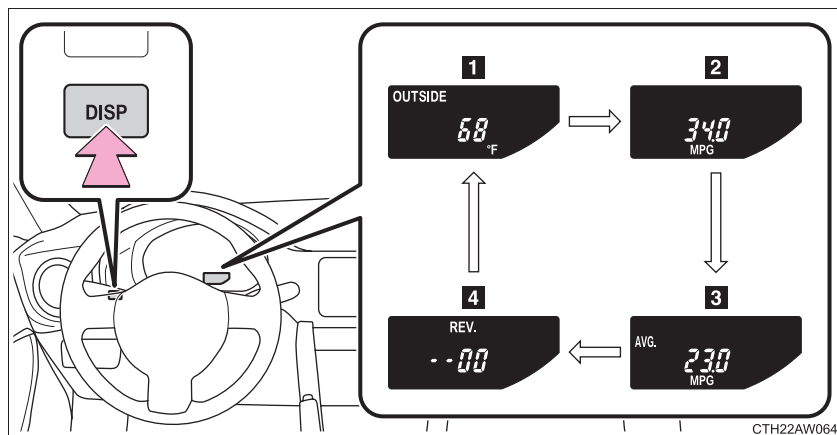
The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the current outside air temperature.



- Outside temperature
- Current fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption
- Setting screen for the REV indicator

Switch the display

Each time the “DISP” switch is pressed, the display changes as follows.



1 Outside temperature

→P. 243

2 Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

3 Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

- The function can be reset by pushing the “DISP” switch for longer than one second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

4 Setting screen for the REV indicator*

→P. 185

*: Only displayed when the vehicle is stopped.

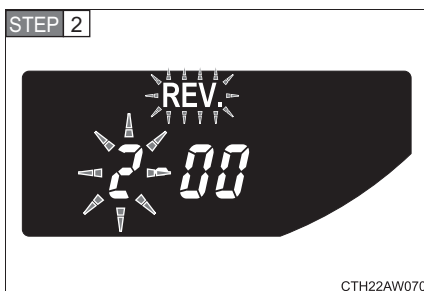
Setting the REV indicator

■ Changing the REV indicator settings

The engine speed at which the REV indicator turns on at and whether a buzzer sounds or not when the light turns on can be set.

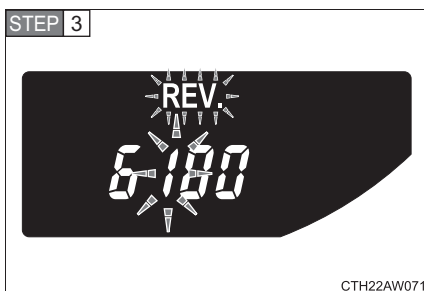
Engine speed setting range: From 2000 to 7400 rpm (r/min)

STEP 1 Press the “DISP” switch repeatedly until the setting screen is displayed. (→P. 184)



Press and hold the “DISP” switch.

“REV.” and the thousandth place flash. After flashing, the number changes each time the button is pressed and held.



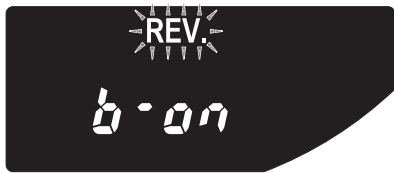
Press the “DISP” switch.

The hundredth place flashes. After flashing, the number changes each time the button is pressed and held.

STEP 4 Press the “DISP” switch.

A buzzer sounds once, and setting of the engine speed value is complete.

STEP 5



CTH22AW072

Press and hold the “DISP” switch.

Each time the “DISP” switch is pressed and held, the buzzer changes between activated and deactivated.

“b-on”: Buzzer activated

“b-off”: Buzzer deactivated

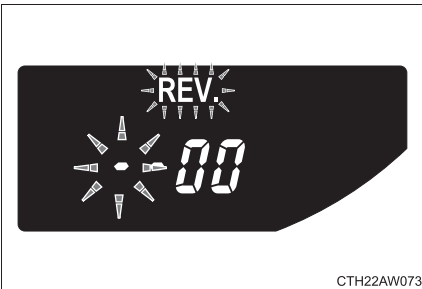
When the setting changes from “b-off” to “b-on”, the buzzer sounds 3 times.

STEP 6

Press the “DISP” switch.

When the buzzer sounds, all settings have been completed. The settings are displayed.

■ Deactivating the REV indicator settings



CTH22AW073

After setting the thousandth place to “-”, press the “DISP” switch once.

■ The multi-information display operate when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

CAUTION

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

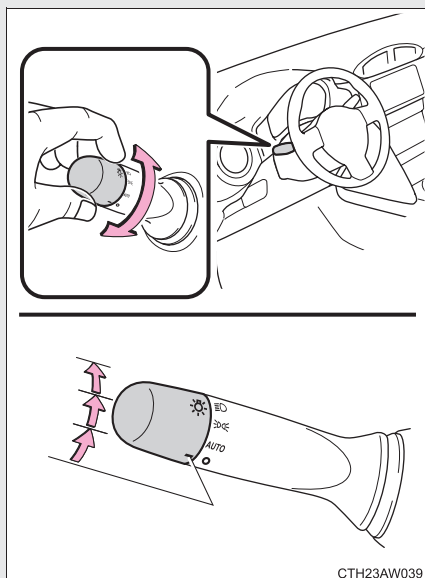
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new shift position number appearing on the display. In this case, wait until the display changes and take care not to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:



○ Off

The daytime running lights turn on.

AUTO The headlights, parking, daytime running lights and so on turn on and off automatically. (When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode)

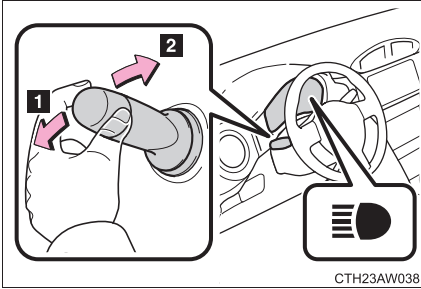


The side marker, parking, tail, license plate, daytime running lights and instrument panel lights turn on.



The headlights and all the lights listed above (except daytime running lights) turn on.

Turning on the high beam headlights



- 1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

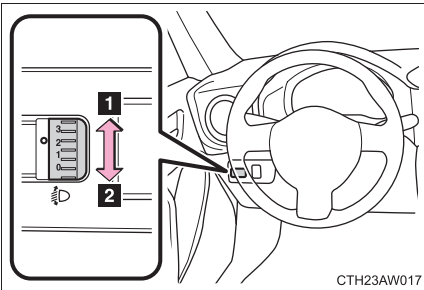
Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

- 2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Manual headlight leveling dial

The level of the headlights can be adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle.



- 1** Raises the level of the headlights
- 2** Lowers the level of the headlights

■ Guide to dial settings

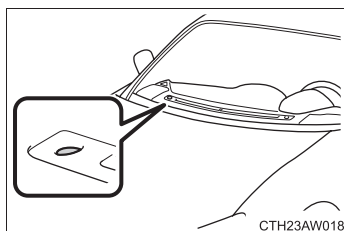
Occupancy and luggage load conditions		Dial position
Occupants	Luggage load	
Driver	None	0
Driver and front passenger	None	0
All seats occupied	None	1
All seats occupied	Full luggage loading	1
Driver	Full luggage loading	2

■ Daytime running light system

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started, the shift lever is shifted out of P and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

Vehicles with a manual transmission: To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ Headlight control sensor



Headlight control sensor is located on the passenger's side.

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ Automatic light off system

The light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off. (The lights turn off immediately if  on the key is pressed after all the doors are locked.)

To turn the lights on again, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off and then back to  or



■ Light reminder buzzer

A buzzer sounds when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ Battery-saving function

In the following conditions, the headlights and the other remaining lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes in order to prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged:

- The headlights and/or tail lights are on.
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off.
- The light switch is in  or **AUTO**.

This function will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode
- When the light switch is operated
- When the door is opened or closed

■ Customization that can be configured at your Scion dealer

Settings of the light sensor sensitivity can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 407)

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

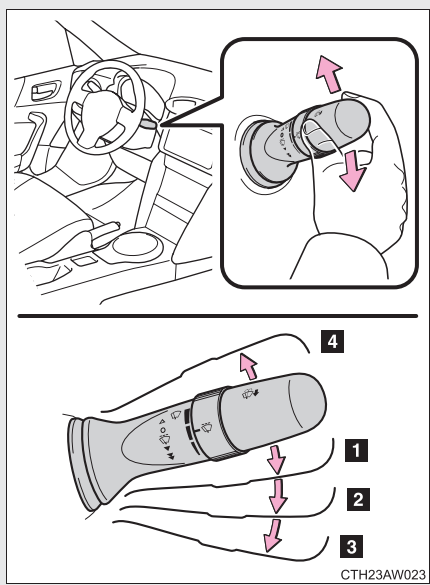
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

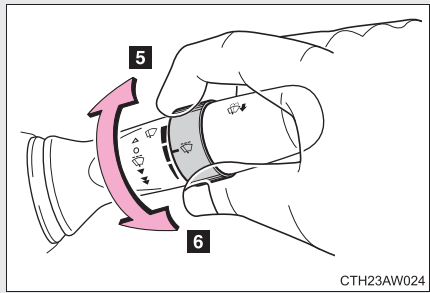
Windshield wipers and washer

When intermittent windshield wiper operation is selected, the wiper interval can be adjusted.

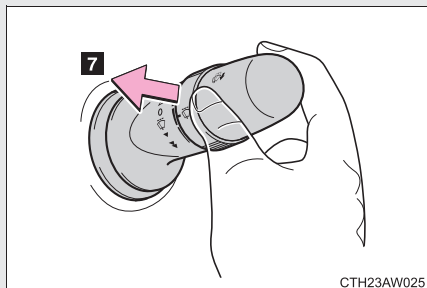
The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows.



- 1 Intermittent windshield wiper operation
- 2 Low speed windshield wiper operation
- 3 High speed windshield wiper operation
- 4 Temporary operation



- 5 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
- 6 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



7 Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

■ The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

**NOTICE****■ When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may over-heat.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

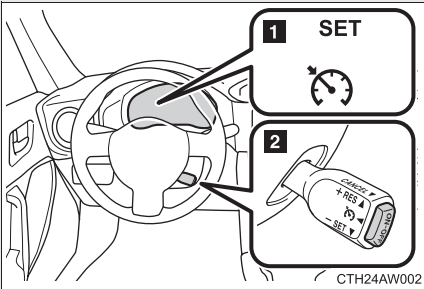
In this case, contact your Scion dealer.

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

2-4. Using other driving systems

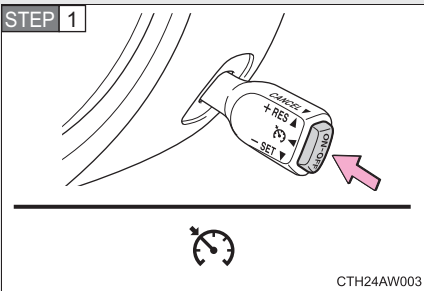
Cruise control

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.



- 1 Indicators
- 2 Cruise control switch

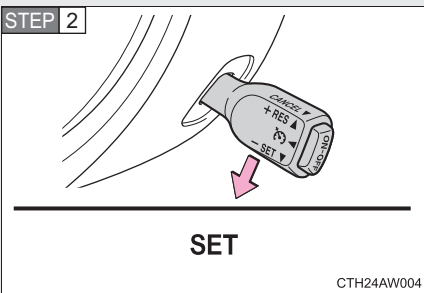
■ Setting the vehicle speed



Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator (green) will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



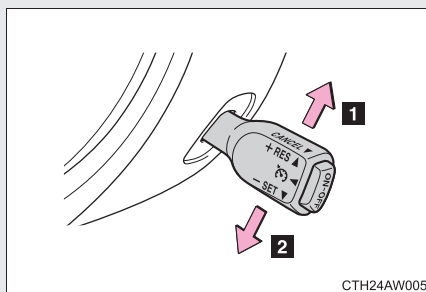
Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

“SET” indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

■ Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

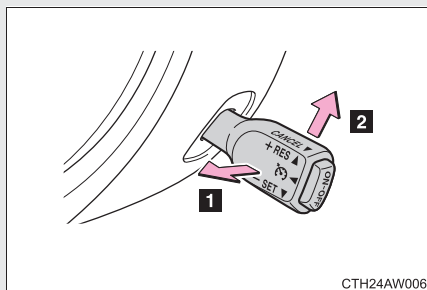
The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment (vehicles with a km/h odometer display): By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Fine adjustment (vehicles with an mph odometer display): By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

■ Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



- 1** Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied or the clutch pedal (manual transmission only) is depressed.

- 2** Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 20 mph (32 km/h).

■ Cruise control can be set when

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

- The shift lever is in D or M and the vehicle is in the 2nd gear or higher.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Vehicles with a manual transmission

- The vehicle is in the 2nd gear or higher.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ Automatic cruise control cancelation

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 20 mph (32 km/h).
- VSC is activated.

■ The system may be malfunctioning when

In the following situations, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer.

- The cruise control indicator light comes on in yellow.
- The cruise control indicator does not come on even when the “ON-OFF” button is pressed while the engine is running.

 CAUTION

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- During emergency towing

2-4. Using other driving systems

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

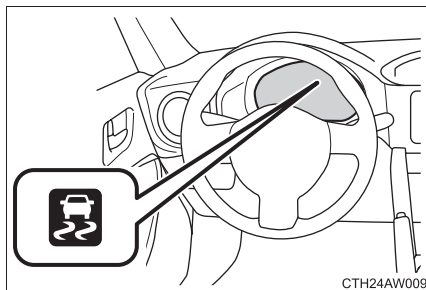
■ TRAC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads. The TRAC system is also equipped with the brake LSD function.

■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

When the TRAC/VSC systems are operating

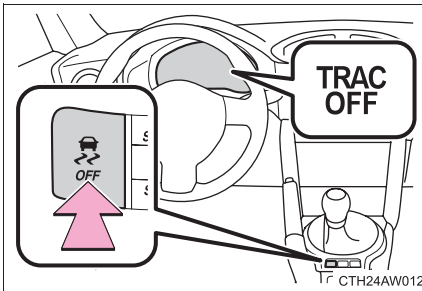


The slip indicator light will flash while the TRAC (brake LSD function)/VSC systems are operating.

Disabling the TRAC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRAC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing  to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

In this case, the brake LSD function remains on.



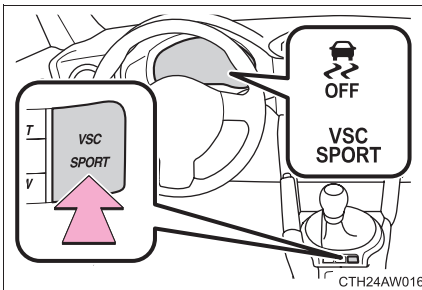
To turn the TRAC system off, quickly press and release the button.

The “TRAC OFF” indicator light will come on.

Press the button again to turn the system back on.

“VSC SPORT” mode

Your vehicle is equipped with two types of control modes to accommodate various driving preferences. The control modes can be selected with the “VSC SPORT” mode switch. Normal mode allows secure and smooth normal driving. When the switch is pressed, “VSC SPORT” mode is activated. Control characteristics such as the VSC and TRAC are adjusted to afford maneuverability closer to what a driver may have imagined, while a sense of security is retained.



“VSC SPORT” mode/Normal mode

The “VSC SPORT” indicator and VSC off indicator come on when in “VSC SPORT” mode.

Selecting TRAC mode and VSC mode

Modes can be selected to suit your driving conditions as follows:

Driving conditions	TRAC modes	VSC modes	Indicator lights
Normal roads	On	Normal mode	—
Rough roads	Off	Normal mode	TRAC OFF
Sport driving	On	“VSC SPORT” mode	 TRAC OFF  VSC SPORT
	Off	“VSC SPORT” mode	TRAC OFF  TRAC OFF  VSC SPORT
	Off	Off	TRAC OFF  TRAC OFF

■ Turning off both TRAC and VSC systems

To turn the TRAC and VSC systems off, press and hold  for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The “TRAC OFF” indicator light and the VSC off indicator light will come on. In this case, the brake LSD function remains on.

Press the button again to turn the systems back on.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRAC and VSC systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
 - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ EPS operation sound

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Automatic reactivation of TRAC and VSC systems

After turning the TRAC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically reactivated in the following situations:

- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off
- If only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC will turn on when vehicle speed is more than approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
If both the TRAC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic reactivation will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal after a little while.

■ Automatic deactivation of “VSC SPORT” mode

When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off after driving in “VSC SPORT” mode, the mode is automatically deactivated.

⚠ CAUTION

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- Tires with inadequate gripping ability are used (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle’s stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ When the VSC and/or brake LSD function is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

 CAUTION

■ **When the TRAC/VSC systems are turned off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRAC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ **Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRAC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact your Scion dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ **Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- To maintain vehicle balance while driving, position luggage evenly within the luggage compartment.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

$(\text{Cargo capacity}) = (\text{Total load capacity}) - (\text{Total weight of occupants})$

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit—

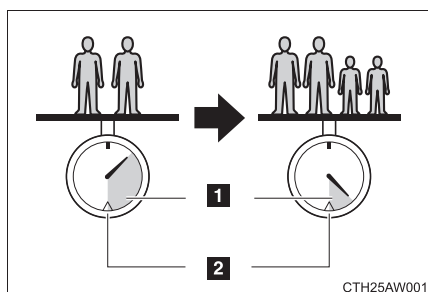
- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.
For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})$
- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

(→P. 378)

Scion does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

Calculation formula for your vehicle



1 Cargo capacity

2 Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) (→P. 378)

When 2 people with the combined weight of A lb. (kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) of B lb. (kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be C lb. (kg) as follows:

$$B^{*2} \text{ lb. (kg)} - A^{*1} \text{ lb. (kg)} = C^{*3} \text{ lb. (kg)}$$

*1: A =Weight of people

*2: B =Total load capacity

*3: C =Available cargo and luggage load

In this condition, if 2 more passengers with the combined weight of D lb. (kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced E lb. (kg) as follows:

$$C \text{ lb. (kg)} - D^{*4} \text{ lb. (kg)} = E^{*5} \text{ lb. (kg)}$$

*4: D =Additional weight of people

*5: E =Available cargo and luggage load

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

 CAUTION **Things that must not be carried in the trunk**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

-  Receptacles containing gasoline
-  Aerosol cans

 CAUTION

■ **Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
 - To prevent cargo and luggage from sliding forward during braking, do not stack anything in the enlarged trunk. Keep cargo and luggage low, as close to the floor as possible.
 - When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
 - Never allow anyone to ride in the enlarged trunk. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
 - Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the clutch, brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident:
 - At the feet of the driver
 - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
 - On the package tray
 - On the instrument panel
 - On the dashboard
 - Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- **Capacity and distribution**
- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
 - Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

2-5. Driving information

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

■ **Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight): (→P. 378)**

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

■ **Seating capacity**

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

■ **Towing capacity**

Scion does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

■ **Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

■ **Total load capacity and seating capacity**

These details are described on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 291)

 CAUTION

■ **Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires.

Make sure to install 4 tires that are of the specified size, and that all 4 tires are the same size, same maker, same brand and tread pattern.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

- If a door is opened and closed when its side window is frozen, the window safety device will operate and the side window open/close function linked to door operation may not operate correctly. If this occurs, perform the following after the ice has melted.

STEP 1 Open the side window until it is approximately halfway open with the door closed.

STEP 2 Fully close the window by pulling the switch up to the one-touch closing position and continue holding the switch for 1 second or more after the window fully closes.

The window position is reset and the safety device operations will be released.

■ When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

■ When parking the vehicle (in the winter time or in the cold latitudes)

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P (automatic transmission) or 1 or R (manual transmission) without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Tire chains

Tire chains cannot be used on your vehicle because of the lack of clearance between the tires and vehicle body.

When tire chains cannot be used, use of another type of traction device (such as spring chains) may be acceptable if use on your vehicle is recommended by the device manufacturer, taking into account tire size and road conditions.

Follow the device manufacturer's instructions, especially regarding maximum vehicle speed.

To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle, and do not spin your wheels. Damage caused to your vehicle by use of a traction device is not covered under warranty.

Make certain that any traction device you use is an SAE class "S" device, and use it on the rear wheels only.

Always use the utmost care when driving with a traction device. Overconfidence because you are using a traction device could easily lead to a serious accident.

Selecting tire chains

We recommend that you consult your Scion dealer for information about the chains that you can use.

 CAUTION**■ Driving with snow tires**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size, and that are the same size, same maker, same brand and tread pattern.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

 NOTICE**■ Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Scion dealers or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ Fitting tire chains

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

2-5. Driving information

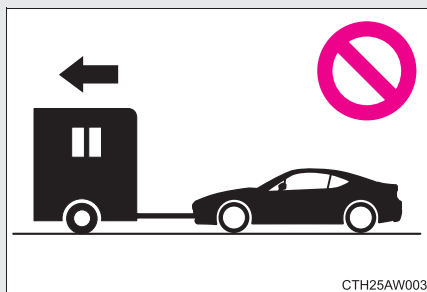
Trailer towing

Scion does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Scion also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your Scion is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



NOTICE

■ **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

Interior features

3

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system	220
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers.....	229

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the AUX/USB port.....	231
Using the microphone	232

3-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list	233
• Interior light	234

3-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features	235
• Glove box.....	236
• Bottle holders.....	237
• Cup holders/ console tray	238

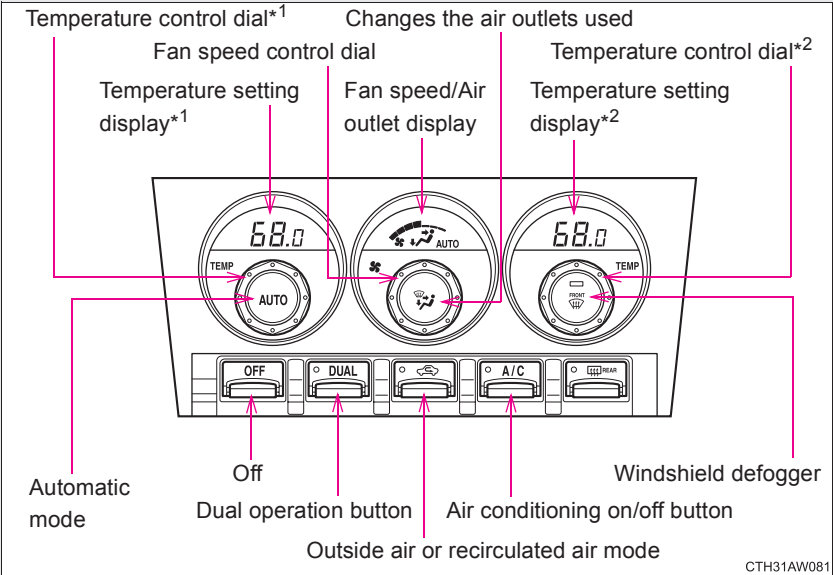
3-5. Other interior features

Sun visors	240
Vanity mirrors	241
Clock	242
Outside temperature display.....	243
Power outlets	244
Floor mat.....	246

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets are automatically selected and fan speed is automatically adjusted according to the set temperature setting.



*1: For the driver's side

*2: For the front passenger's side

Using the automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 Press



.

The dehumidification function begins to operate. Air outlets, fan speed and the air conditioner compressor are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2

Turn temperature control dial clockwise to increase the temperature and turn temperature control dial counterclockwise to decrease the temperature on the driver's side.

When  is pressed (the indicator on  is on) or the passenger's side temperature control dial is turned, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

■ Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated are maintained.

Adjusting the settings manually

STEP 1 To adjust the fan speed, turn the fan speed control dial clockwise (increase) or counter-clock wise (decrease).

Press  to turn the fan off.

STEP 2 To adjust the temperature settings, turn the temperature control dial clockwise (warm) or counter-clock wise (cool).

To adjust the temperature control dial clockwise (warm) or counter-clockwise (cool) on the passenger side to separately adjust the temperature for the passenger and driver sides (dual mode).

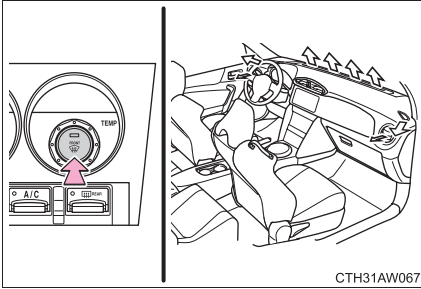
Press  (the indicator on  turns off) to return the driver and passenger side temperatures to the same setting (simultaneous mode).

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

STEP 3 To change the air outlets, press .

The air outlets used are switched each time either side of the button is pressed.

Defogging the windshield



Press .

The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases.

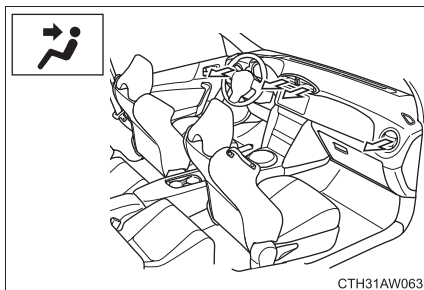
Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

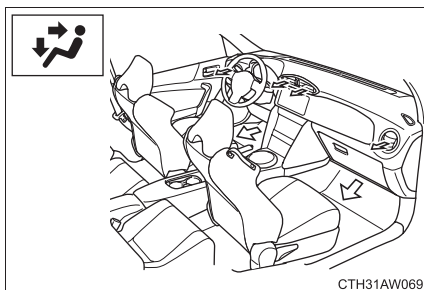
To return to the previous mode,

press  again when the windshield is defogged.

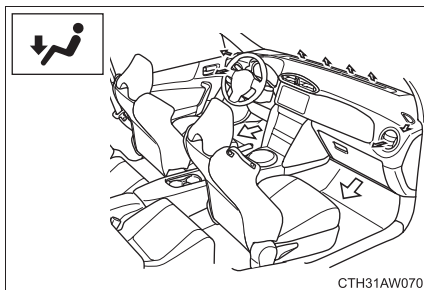
Air outlets and air flow



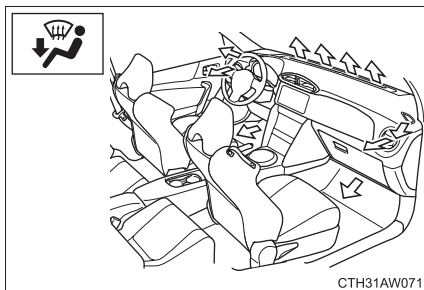
Air flows to the upper body.



Air flows to the upper body and feet.



Air flows to the feet.



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

If the recirculated air mode is used, it may automatically switch to the outside air mode.

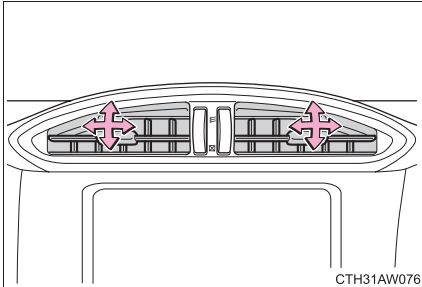
Switching between outside air mode and recirculated air mode

Press .

The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator off) and recirculated air mode (indicator on) each time  is pressed.

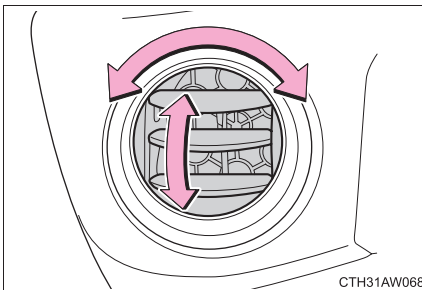
Adjusting the position of the air outlets

Center outlets



Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

Right and left side outlets

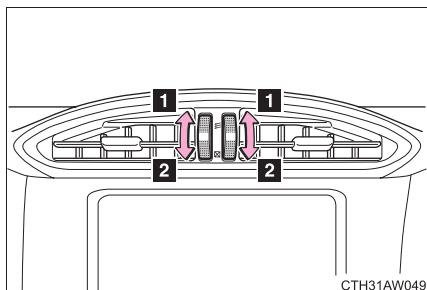


Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

When defrosting the side windows, face the right and left side outlets toward them.

Opening and closing the air outlets

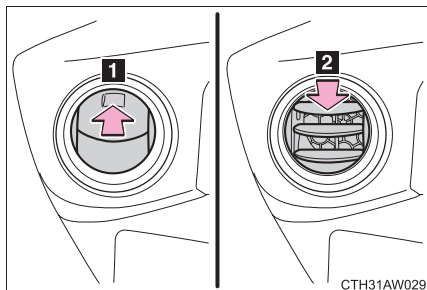
Center outlets



1 Open the air outlet.

2 Close the air outlet.

Right and left side outlets



1 Open the vent.

2 Close the vent.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after  is pressed.

■ Fogging up of the windows

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high.

Turning  on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn  off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ Outside/recirculated air mode

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ When the outside temperature falls to nearly 32°F (0°C)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when  is pressed.

■ Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
 - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
 - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ Air conditioning filter

→P. 298

CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

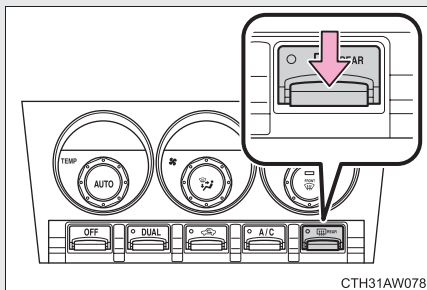
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

The rear window defogger is used to defog the rear window. The outside rear view mirror defoggers* are used to remove frost, dew or raindrops from the outside rear view mirrors.



On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

*: Vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers

■ The defoggers can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ The outside rear view mirror defoggers (vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers)

Turning the rear window defogger on will turn the outside rear view mirror defoggers on.

■ When continuous operation is set

During continuous operation, the defogger stops operating for 2 minutes after every 15 minutes of continual operation. Even during the 2 minutes that operation stops, the operating light remains illuminated. The rear window defogger will continue to operate in this cycle until it is turned off.

■ Customization that can be configured at Scion dealer

The rear window defogger can be set to 15-minute operation or continuous operation. (Customizable features →P. 407)



CAUTION

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on (vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers)**

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.



NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

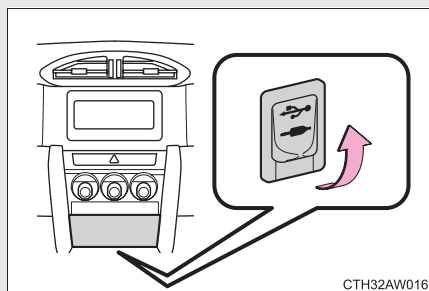
Do not leave the rear window defogger on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the AUX/USB port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

For more information, please refer to the "SCION Audio System Owner's Manual" or "SCION Navigation System Owner's Manual".



Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume and sound quality can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

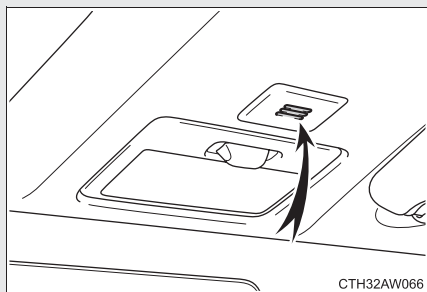
Noise may occur during playback. Use the battery power source of the portable audio device to reduce noise.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the microphone

The microphone can be used for the voice command in the Bluetooth® audio system or the hands-free phone system.

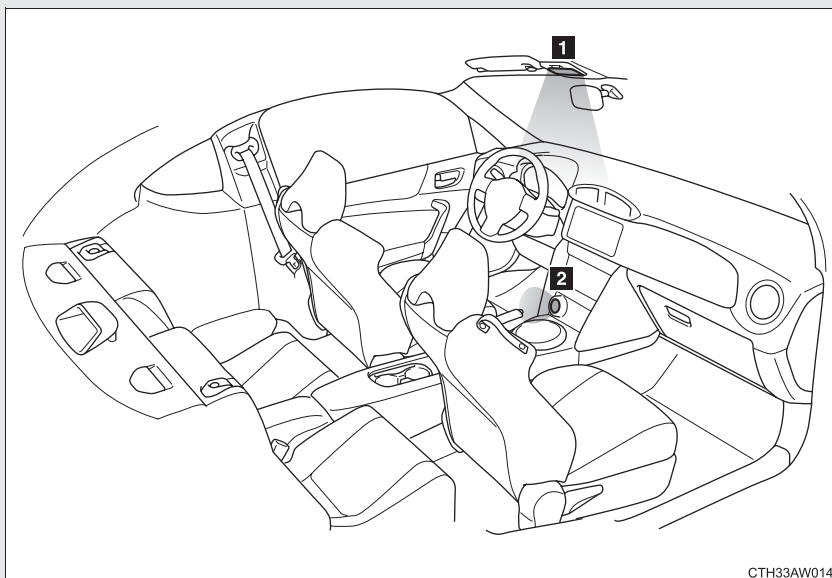
For more information, please refer to the “SCION Audio System Owner’s Manual” or “SCION Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.



CTH32AW066

3-3. Using the interior lights

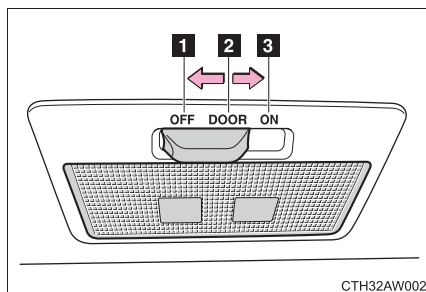
Interior lights list



1 Interior light (→P. 234)

2 “ENGINE START STOP” switch light

Interior light



■ Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

■ To prevent battery discharge

If the following lights remain on when the door is not fully closed, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes:

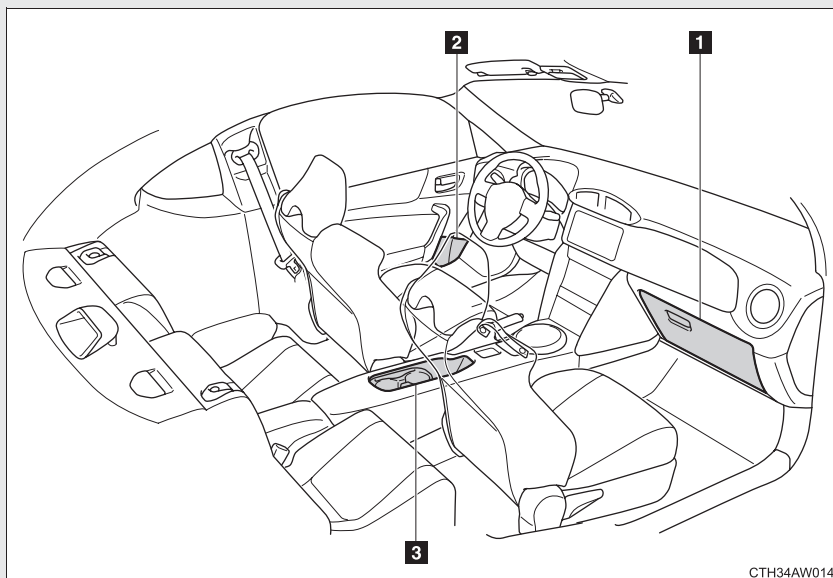
- Interior light (when the switch is in the “DOOR” position)
- “ENGINE START STOP” switch light

■ Customization that can be configured at Scion dealer

Settings (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features → P. 407)

3-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features



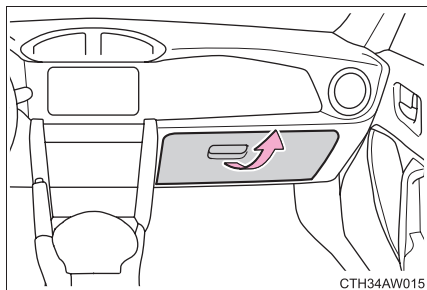
- 1** Glove box
- 2** Bottle holders
- 3** Cup holders/console tray

CAUTION

■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

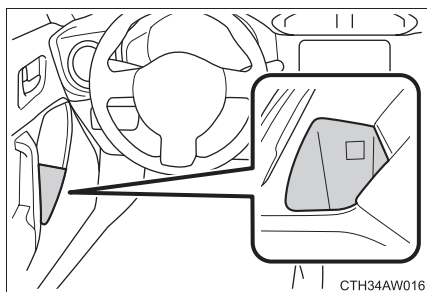
Glove box

Pull up the lever to open the glove box.

! CAUTION**■ Caution while driving**

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

Bottle holders



■ When using the bottle holder

- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the bottle holder

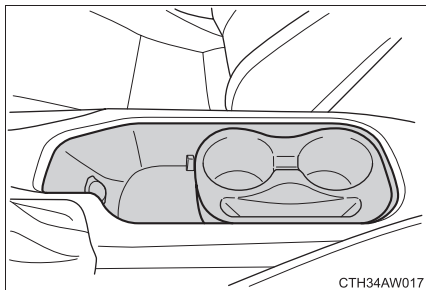
Do not place anything other than a pet bottle in the bottle holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

⚠ NOTICE

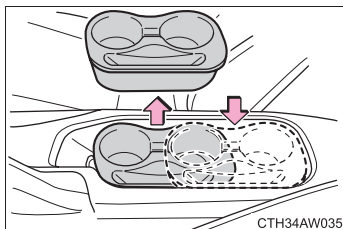
■ Items unsuitable for the bottle holder

Put the cap on before stowing a bottle. Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders, or glasses and paper cups containing liquid. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Cup holders/console tray

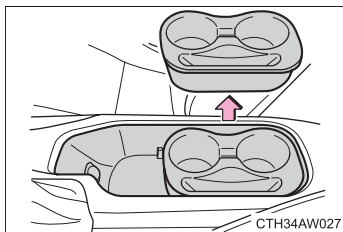


■ Changing the cup holder position



Remove the cup holder and change the holder position.

■ Changing the console tray size



Remove the cup holder.

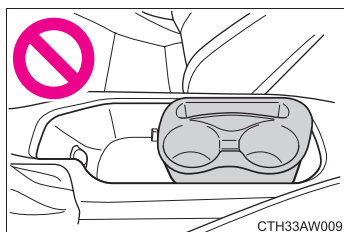
⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Before driving, place the cup holder in the rear position so that it does not hinder shift lever operation.



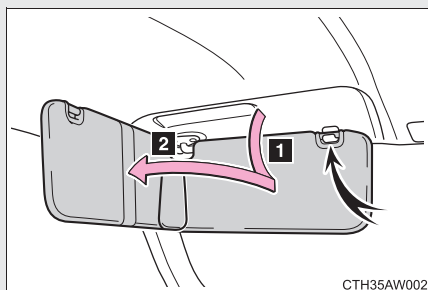
- When placing the cup holder, make sure it is facing the correct direction. Failure to do so will cause the cup holder to not be secure in the console tray and hinder shift lever operation.

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

3-5. Other interior features

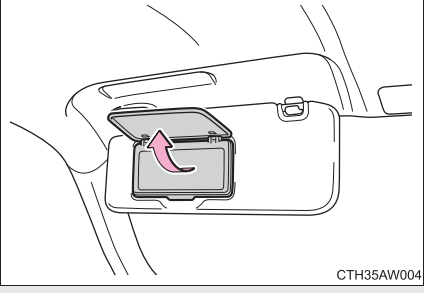
Sun visors



- 1** To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.
- 2** To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3-5. Other interior features

Vanity mirrors

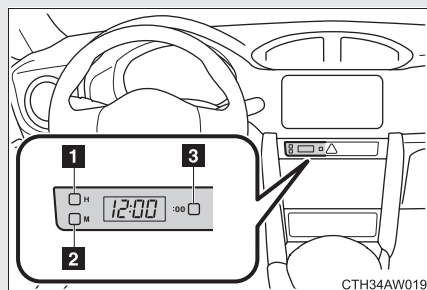


Open the cover to use.

3-5. Other interior features

Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.



- 1** Adjusts the hours
- 2** Adjusts the minutes
- 3** Rounds to the nearest hour*

*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

■ The clock is displayed when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

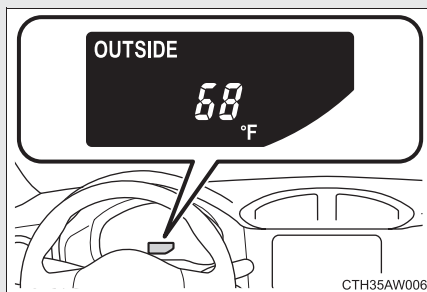
■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The clock data will be reset.

3-5. Other interior features

Outside temperature display

The temperature display shows temperatures within the range of -40°F (-40°C) and 122°F (50°C).



The outside temperature display can be switched by pressing the "DISP" switch. (→P. 184)

■ The outside temperature is displayed when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:

- When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ When "- ." is displayed more than 1 minute or the outside temperature is not displayed

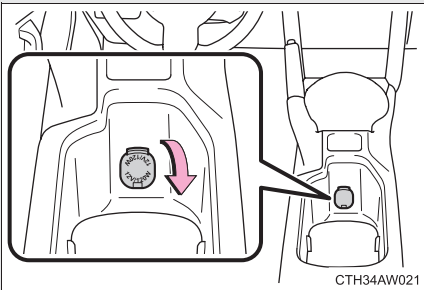
The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Scion dealer.

3-5. Other interior features

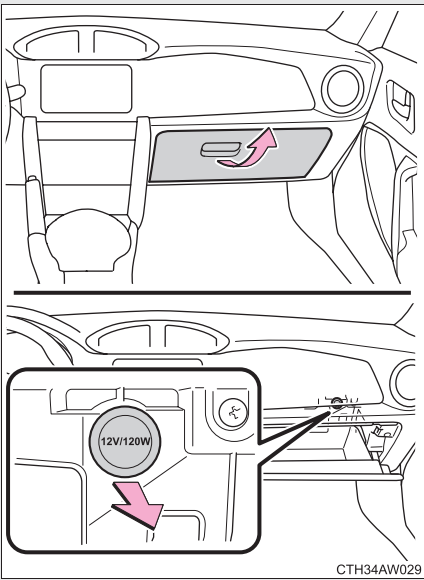
Power outlets

The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories that run on 10 A or less.

In the console tray



In the glove box



■ The power outlet can be used when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

 NOTICE**■ To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent the fuse from being blown

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

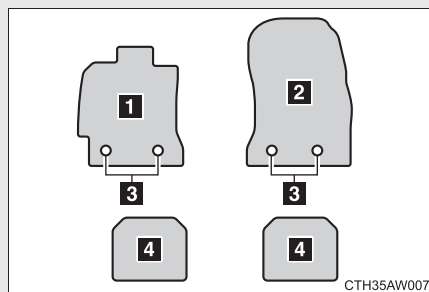
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

3-5. Other interior features

Floor mat

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.



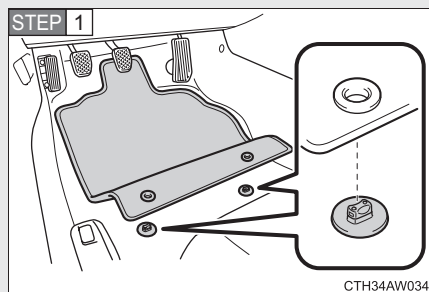
Front

- 1** Driver's seat floor mat
- 2** Front passenger's seat floor mat
- 3** Retaining hook (clip) eyelets

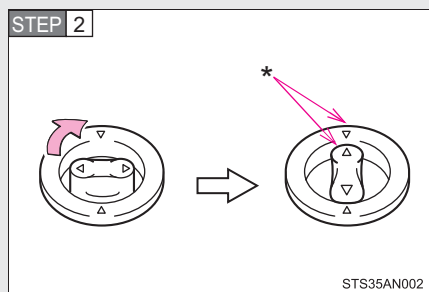
Rear

- 4** Rear seat floor mats

■ Installing the floor mats (front)



Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the Δ marks.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

CAUTION

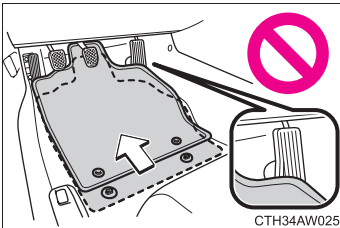
Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

When installing a floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Scion Genuine floor mats.
- Driver's seat floor mat: Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Front: Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

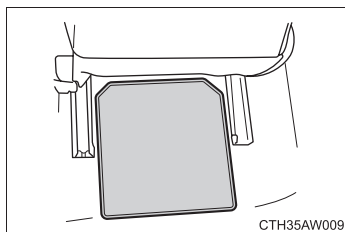
Before driving



- Front: Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- Driver's seat: With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P (automatic transmission) or N (manual transmission), fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

 NOTICE

■ **When installing a rear floor mat**



Make sure that the rear floor mats are installed in the correct position. If a floor mat is positioned incorrectly, it may interfere with the seat rail or other parts when a front seat is moved forward or backward, damaging the vehicle or floor mat.

Maintenance and care

4

4-1. Maintenance and care

- Cleaning and protecting
the vehicle exterior..... 250
- Cleaning and protecting
the vehicle interior..... 254

4-2. Maintenance

- Maintenance
requirements 258
- General maintenance..... 260
- Emission inspection and
maintenance (I/M)
programs..... 263

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

- Do-it-yourself service
precautions 264
- Hood 267
- Positioning a floor jack 269
- Engine compartment..... 271
- Tires 284
- Tire inflation pressure 291
- Wheels 295
- Air conditioning filter..... 298
- Electronic key battery..... 301
- Checking and replacing
fuses 303
- Light bulbs..... 311

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ Parts containing resin such as the bumper

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

CAUTION

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- After driving on salted roads
- If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
- If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Protective film for side sill plates

Make sure to remove the protective film. Failure to do so may cause rust, depending on conditions.

**NOTICE****■ Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

■ Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- When the interior is extremely dirty, wipe away the dirt using a soft cloth slightly dampened with diluted neutral detergent.

■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded ventilated area.

■ Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

■ Caring for leather areas

Scion recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet.
(→P. 87)
Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, acidic or alkaline solutions, dye, bleach or other detergent. Doing so may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.
- Do not use a chemical agent containing silicone (highly-polymerized silicon compound) when cleaning any of the electrical appliances such as the air conditioning, all switches and their surrounding areas.
If silicon (highly-polymerized silicon compound) contacts these components, it may cause the electrical appliances to malfunction.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust, dirt, sand, oil spots etc. on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

**NOTICE****■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires.
- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.

■ When cleaning the instrument panel

When small grains of sand and so forth have gotten into instrument panel's surface and cannot be wiped away using a cloth, use a clay bar without adding water. Forcibly trying to wipe the surface clean with a brush or sponge may scratch the surface or fragments of the cloth may be left in the surface.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Scion recommends the following maintenance.

■ General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Scion dealer.

■ Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.

Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Scion Repair Manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

■ Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Scion parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Scion parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Scion dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Scion dealer

- Scion technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Scion dealer will promptly take care of it.

CAUTION

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

It could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ Warning in handling of battery

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 279)

4-2. Maintenance

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Owner's Warranty Information Booklet” or “Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance Guide”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Scion dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	Check the connections. (→P. 279)
Brake fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 277)
Engine coolant	At the correct level? (→P. 275)
Engine oil	At the correct level? (→P. 272)
Exhaust system	No fumes or strange sounds?
Radiator/condenser/hoses	Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 277)
Washer fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 282)

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Automatic transmission “Park” mechanism	• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in P?
Brake pedal	• Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	• Not pull to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Clutch pedal	• Moves smoothly?
Head restraints	• Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on?
Parking brake	• Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?
Seat belts	• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	• Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Door/trunk	• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tire	• Inflation pressure is correct? • Tire surfaces not worn or damaged? • Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • Wheel nuts are not loose?
Windshield wipers	• The wiper blades should not show any signs of cracking, splitting, wear, contamination or deformation. • The wiper blades should clear the windshield without streaking or skipping.



CAUTION

■ If the engine is running

Turn the engine off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Scion dealer to service the vehicle.

■ Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased.

Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

■ When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

■ If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Scion dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 279)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) • Distilled water
Brake fluid level (→P. 277)	• FMVSS No.116 fresh DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine coolant level (→P. 275)	• “TOYOTA Genuine 50/50 Pre-mixed Super Long Life Coolant BLUE” or similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. • “TOYOTA Genuine 50/50 Pre-mixed Super Long Life Coolant BLUE” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding engine coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 272)	• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)

Items	Parts and tools
Fuses (→P. 303)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 311)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver
Radiator and condenser (→P. 277)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 291)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 282)	• Water washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel

CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille

Be sure the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is off. With the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 277)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

NOTICE

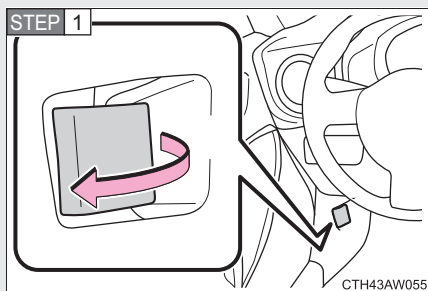
■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

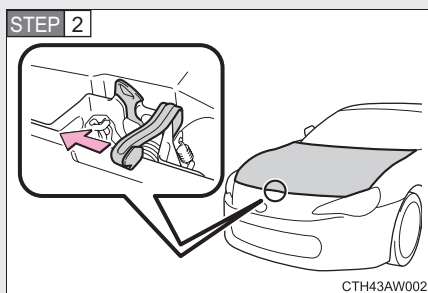
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

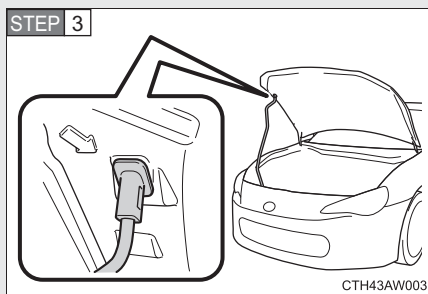


Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



Push the auxiliary catch lever to the left and lift the hood.



Hold the hood open by inserting the supporting rod into the slot.

 CAUTION

■ **Pre-driving check**

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE

■ **When opening the hood**

- Do not lift up or operate the wipers. Doing so may cause the hood and wipers to contact, scratching the hood.
- Use caution when opening the hood in windy weather as it may close suddenly in strong wind.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Scion products to the engine hood. Such additional weight on the engine hood may cause it to be too heavy to be supported by the supporting rod when opened.

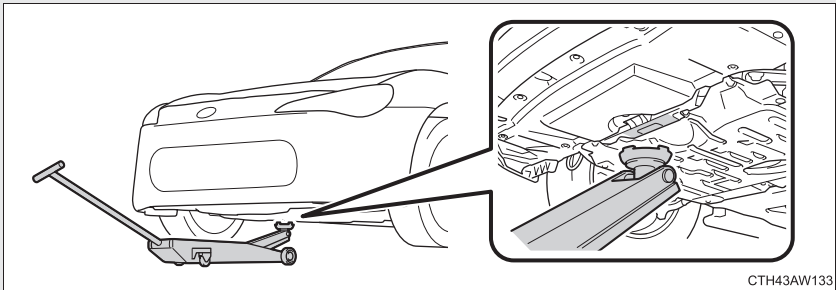
■ **When closing the hood**

Do not apply excessive weight or force when closing the hood as doing so may result in damage.

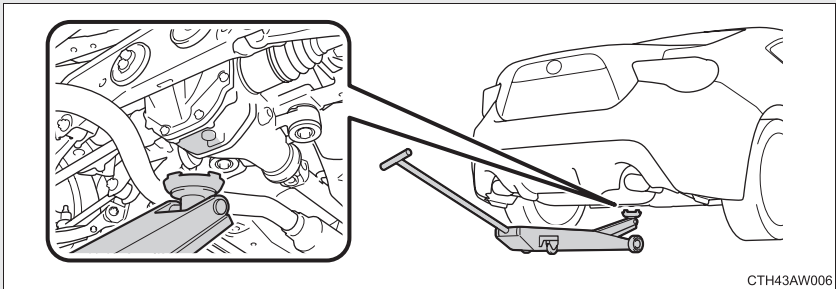
Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

■ Front



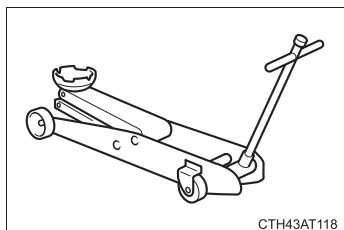
■ Rear



CAUTION

■ When raising your vehicle

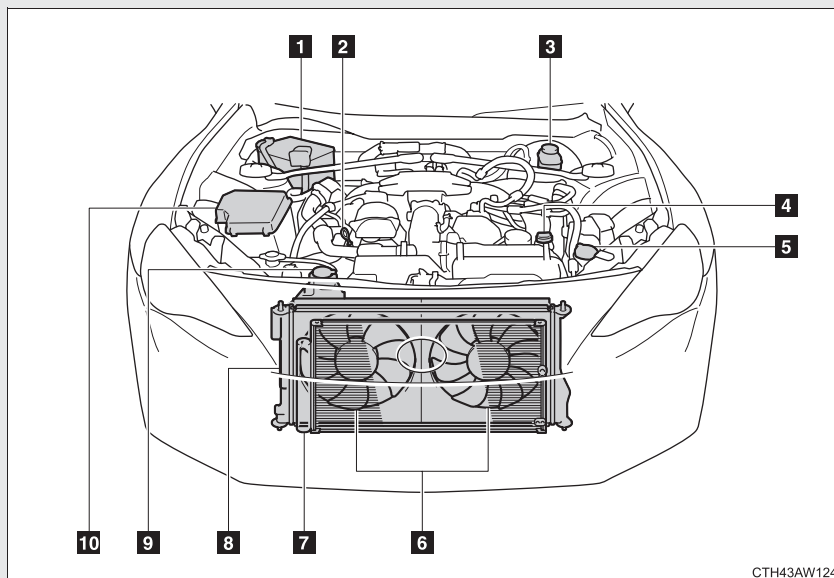
Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:



- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.

- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (vehicles with an automatic transmission) or R (vehicles with a manual transmission).
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any object on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure that there is sufficient surrounding space.
The vehicle's position may change slightly when lowered.

Engine compartment



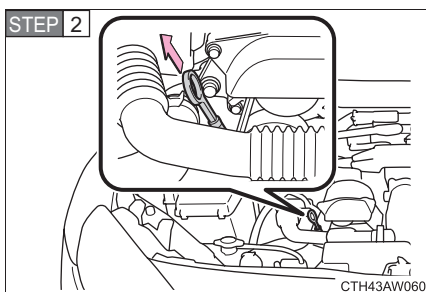
- | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 Battery | (→P. 279) | 5 Washer fluid tank | (→P. 282) |
| 2 Engine oil level dipstick | (→P. 272) | 6 Electric cooling fans | |
| 3 Brake fluid reservoir | (→P. 277) | 7 Condenser | (→P. 277) |
| 4 Engine oil filler cap | (→P. 273) | 8 Radiator | (→P. 277) |
| | | 9 Engine coolant reservoir | (→P. 275) |
| | | 10 Fuse box | (→P. 303) |

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than five minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

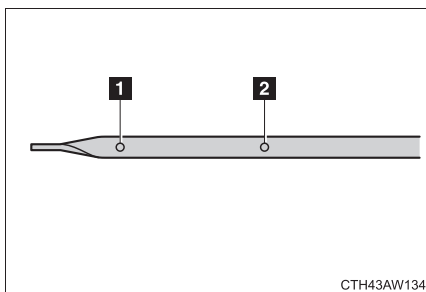
STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

When checking the oil, look at both sides of the dipstick and use the lower measurement to determine the level of oil.

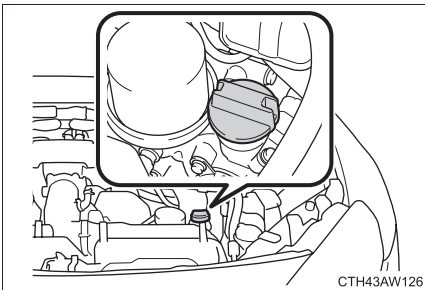
STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



1 Low

2 Full

■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 382
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

- STEP 1** Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.
- STEP 2** Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.
- STEP 3** Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

 CAUTION

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
Call your Scion dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

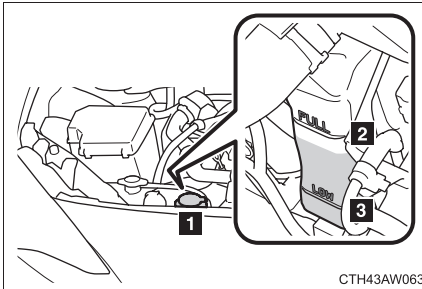
Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



1 Reservoir cap

2 “FULL”

3 “LOW”

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Scion dealer pressure test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

■ Coolant selection

Only use “TOYOTA Genuine 50/50 Pre-mixed Super Long Life Coolant BLUE” or similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“TOYOTA Genuine 50/50 Pre-mixed Super Long Life Coolant BLUE” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Scion dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the radiator cap.

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

 NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects. If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Scion dealer.

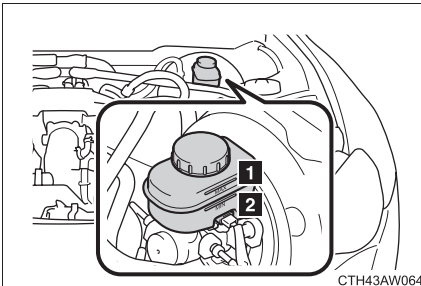
CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Brake fluid

■ Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the “MAX” and “MIN” lines on the tank.

1 “MAX”

2 “MIN”

■ Adding fluid

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3
Items	Clean funnel

■ Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

CAUTION

■ When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

NOTICE

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

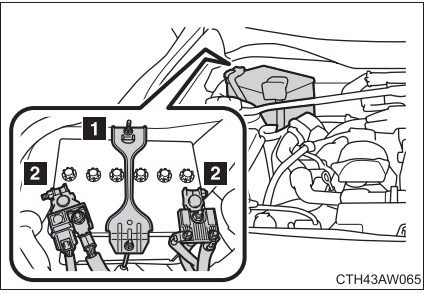
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

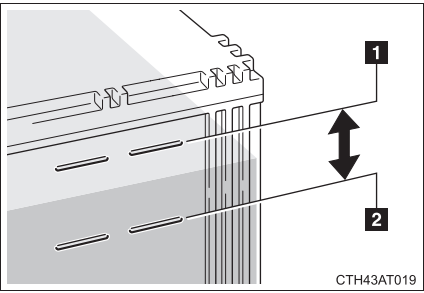
■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



- 1 Hold-down clamp
- 2 Terminals

■ Checking battery fluid

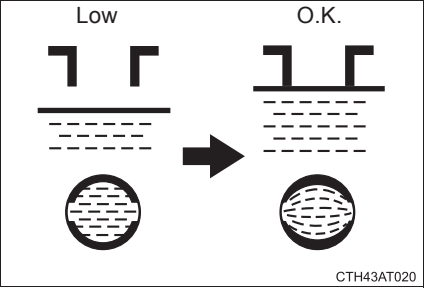


Check that the level is between “UPPER LEVEL” and “LOWER LEVEL”.

- 1 “UPPER LEVEL”
- 2 “LOWER LEVEL”

If the fluid level is at or below “LOWER LEVEL”, add distilled water.

■ Adding distilled water



STEP 1 Remove the vent plug.

STEP 2 Add distilled water.

If the “UPPER LEVEL” line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.

STEP 3 Put the vent plug back on and close securely.

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the battery

- Unlocking the doors using the smart key system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts, contact your Scion dealer.

CAUTION

Chemicals in the battery

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

 NOTICE

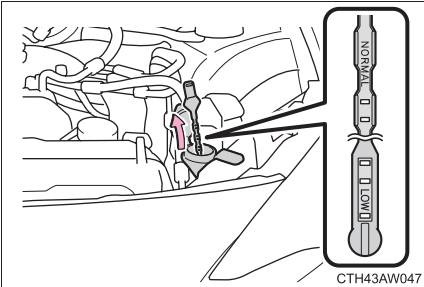
■ **When recharging the battery**

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ **When adding distilled water**

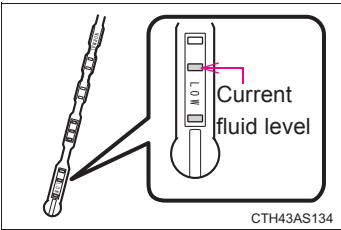
Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Washer fluid



If the washer fluid level is at “LOW”, add washer fluid.

■ **Using the gauge**



The washer fluid level can be checked by observing the position of the level on the liquid-covered holes in the gauge. If the level falls below the second hole from the bottom (the “LOW” position), refill the washer fluid.

 CAUTION **When adding washer fluid**

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

 NOTICE **Washer fluid**

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

 Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.

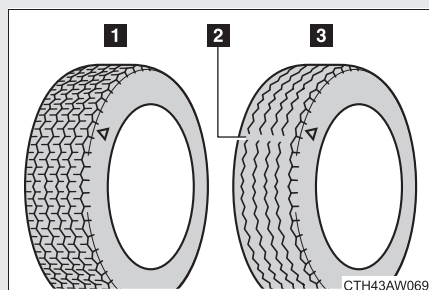
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

■ Checking tires

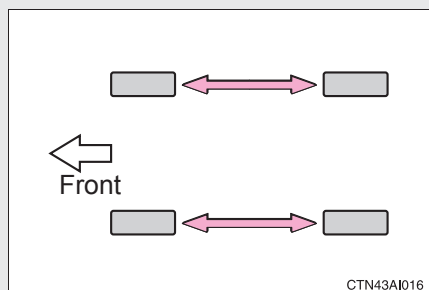


- 1 New tread
- 2 Treadwear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

■ Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Scion recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

■ The tire pressure warning system

Your Scion is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 336)

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Scion dealer. (→P. 285)

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Scion dealer.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Scion dealer.

■ Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires

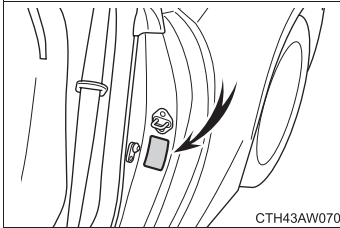
The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

■ Low profile tires

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or tire chains on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

■ Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.



For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire. (→P. 394)

■ Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 212)

■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

MODEL/FCC IDs:

Transmitter: PAXPMVC010

Receiver: HYQ23AAE

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

NOTE:

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

 CAUTION
■ Tire pressure warning system operation

The tire pressure warning system may not provide warning immediately if a tire bursts or if sudden air leakage occurs.

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Make sure to install 4 tires that are of the specified size, and that all 4 tires are the same size, same maker, same brand and tread pattern.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Scion.
- Only use radial tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

 NOTICE
■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Scion dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

 NOTICE

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Scion dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 285)

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or pot holes.

These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **Low profile tires and wheels**

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when receiving impact from the road surface. Therefore pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid pot holes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ **If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

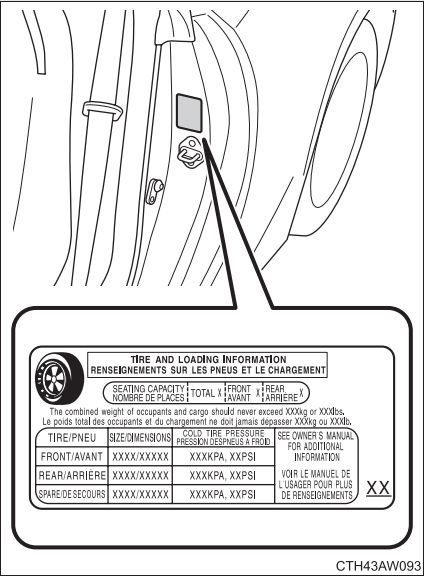
Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

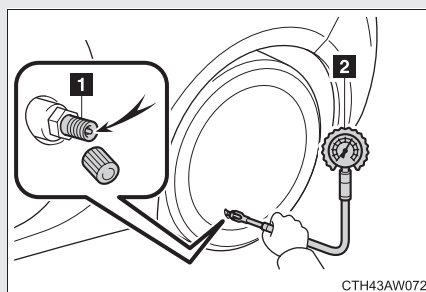
Tire inflation pressure

■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 388)



■ Inspection and adjustment procedure



1 Tire valve

2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust the pressure.

If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

■ Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month.

Do not forget to check the spare.

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Scion dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

 CAUTION

■ **Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

 NOTICE

■ **When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Scion dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as “offset”.

Scion does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Scion wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Scion genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

■ When replacing wheels

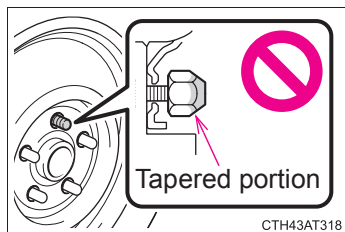
The wheels of your Scion are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 285)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ When installing the wheel nuts



- Be sure to install the wheel nuts with the tapered ends facing inward. Installing the nuts with the tapered ends facing outward can cause the wheel to break and eventually cause the wheel to come off while driving, which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

**NOTICE****■ Replacing tire inflation pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Scion dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Scion dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Scion wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

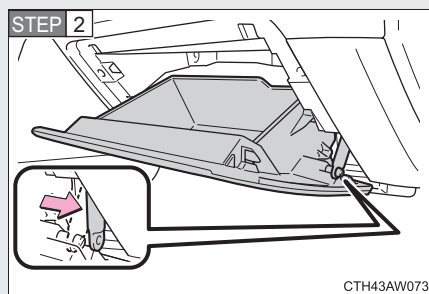
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Air conditioning filter

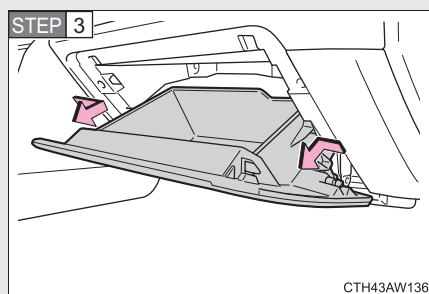
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

■ Removal method

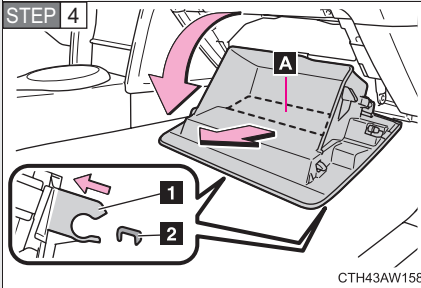
STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.



Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.



Push in each side of the glove box and pull the glove box toward you to disconnect the claws.

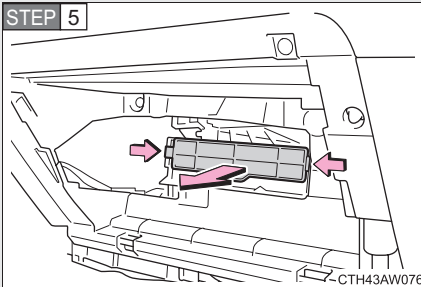


Lower the glove box slowly until surface **A** is horizontal with the floor, then pull it out. (Simply pulling with gentle force will disengage the lower claws.)

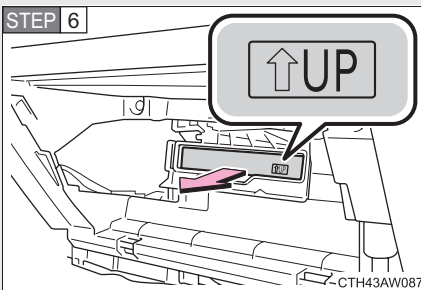
1 Lower claw

2 Lower claw engagement point

Do not forcibly pull the glove box. Otherwise, the lower claws or the lower claw engagement points may be deformed, making it difficult to reinstall or close the glove box.



Remove the filter cover.



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Scheduled Maintenance Guide” or “Owner’s Manual Supplement”.)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.



NOTICE

■ When removing the glove box

Do not forcibly pull the glove box. Otherwise, the lower claws or the lower claw engagement points may be deformed, making it difficult to reinstall or close the glove box.

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

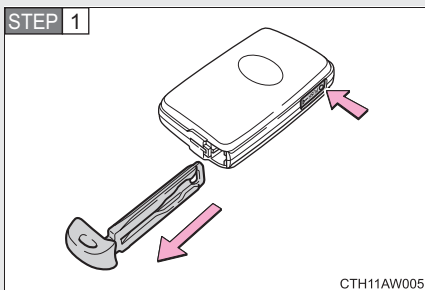
Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

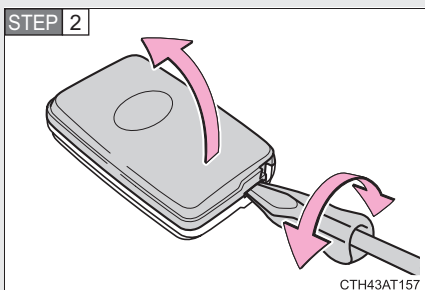
■ You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR1632

■ Replacing the battery

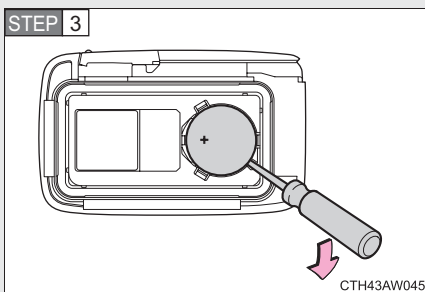


Take out the mechanical key.



Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Scion dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

■ If the key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart key system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.



CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.



NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

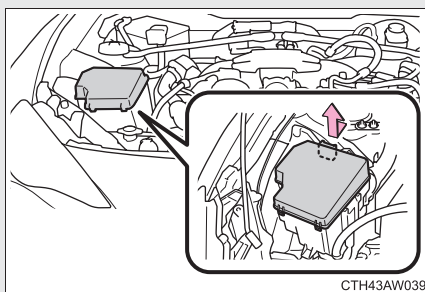
Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.

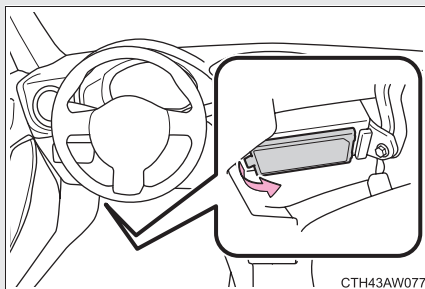
STEP 2 Open the fuse box cover.

Engine compartment



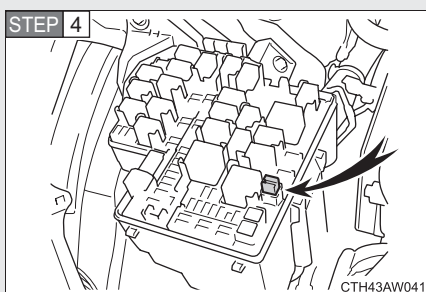
Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

Instrument panel



Remove the lid.

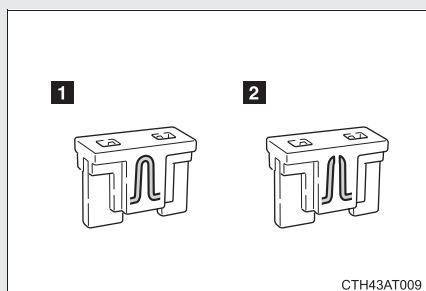
STEP 3 After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” (→P. 306) for details about which fuse to check.



Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 5 Check if the fuse has blown.

Type A

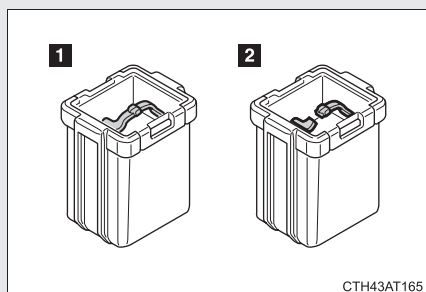


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type B

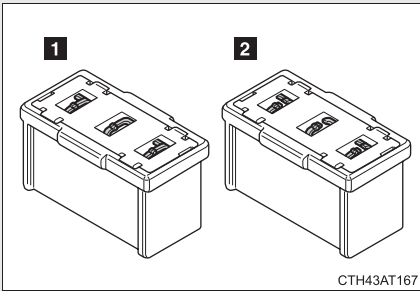


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C

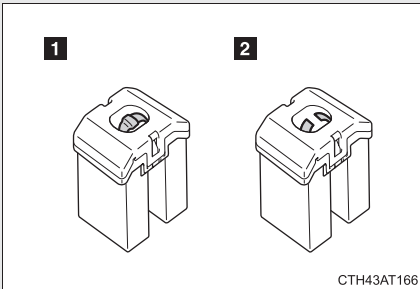


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact your Scion dealer.

Type D



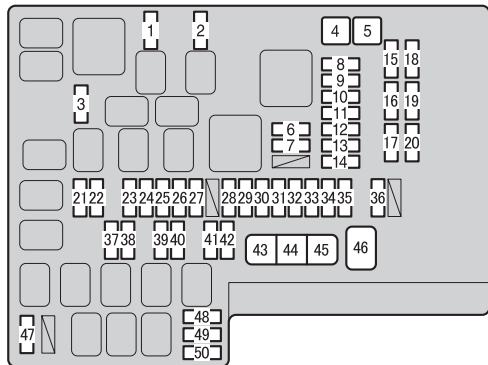
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact your Scion dealer.

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

■ Engine compartment



CTH43AW118

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	MIR HTR	7.5 A	Outside rear view mirror defoggers
2	RDI	25 A	Electric cooling fan
3	(PUSH-AT)	7.5 A	Engine control unit
4	ABS NO. 1	40 A	ABS
5	HEATER	50 A	Air conditioning system
6	WASHER	10 A	Windshield washer
7	WIPER	30 A	Windshield wipers
8	RR DEF	30 A	Rear window defogger
9	(RR FOG)	10 A	—
10	D FR DOOR	25 A	Power window (driver's side)
11	(CDS)	25 A	Electric cooling fan
12	D-OP	25 A	—
13	ABS NO. 2	25 A	ABS
14	D FL DOOR	25 A	Power window (passenger's side)
15	SPARE	See note.	Spare fuse

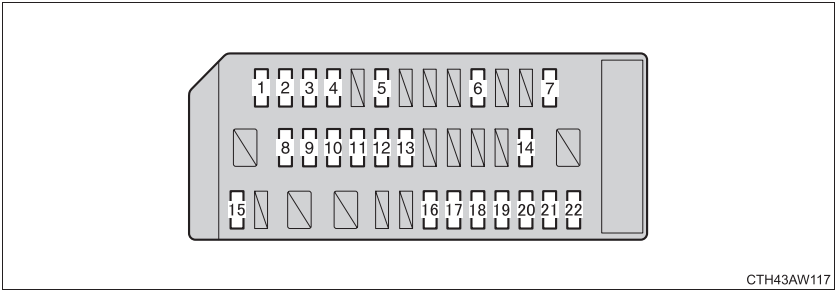
	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
16	SPARE	See note.	Spare fuse
17	SPARE	See note.	Spare fuse
18	SPARE	See note.	Spare fuse
19	SPARE	See note.	Spare fuse
20	SPARE	See note.	Spare fuse
21	ST	7.5 A	Starting system
22	ALT-S	7.5 A	Charging system
23	(STR LOCK)	7.5 A	Steering lock system
24	D/L	20 A	Power door lock
25	ETCS	15 A	Engine control unit
26	(AT+B)	7.5 A	Transmission
27	(AM2 NO. 2)	7.5 A	Smart key system
28	EFI (CTRL)	15 A	Engine control unit
29	EFI (HTR)	15 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
30	EFI (IGN)	15 A	Starting system
31	EFI (+B)	7.5 A	Engine control unit
32	HAZ	15 A	Turn signal lights, emergency flashers
33	MPX-B	7.5 A	Automatic air conditioning system, gauge and meters
34	F/PMP	20 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
35	IG2 MAIN	30 A	SRS airbag system, engine control unit
36	DCC	30 A	Interior light, wireless remote con- trol, main body ECU

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
37	HORN NO. 2	7.5 A	Horn
38	HORN NO. 1	7.5 A	Horn
39	H-LP LH LO	15 A	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
40	H-LP RH LO	15 A	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
41	H-LP LH HI	10 A	Left-hand headlight (high beam)
42	H-LP RH HI	10 A	Right-hand headlight (high beam)
43	INJ	30 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
44	H-LP WASHER	30 A	—
45	AM2 NO. 1	40 A	Starting system, engine control unit
46	EPS	80 A	Electric power steering
47	A/B MAIN	15 A	SRS airbag system
48	ECU-B	7.5 A	Wireless remote control, main body ECU
49	DOME	20 A	Interior light
50	IG2	7.5 A	Engine control unit

Note

One of each of the following spare fuses are provided: 7.5 A, 10 A, 15 A, 20 A, 25 A, 30 A.

■ Instrument panel



CTH43AW117

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	ECU ACC	10 A	Main body ECU, outside rear view mirrors
2	P/POINT No.2	15 A	Power outlet
3	PANEL	10 A	Illumination
4	TAIL	10 A	Tail lights
5	DRL	10 A	Daytime running light system
6	STOP	7.5 A	Stop lights
7	OBD	7.5 A	On-board diagnosis system
8	HEATER-S	7.5 A	Air conditioning system
9	HEATER	10 A	Air conditioning system
10	FR FOG LH	10 A	—
11	FR FOG RH	10 A	—
12	BK/UP LP	7.5 A	Back-up lights
13	ECU IG1	10 A	ABS, electric power steering
14	AM1	7.5 A	Starting system
15	AMP	15 A	Audio system
16	AT UNIT	15 A	Transmission
17	GAUGE	7.5 A	Gauge and meters, smart key system
18	ECU IG2	10 A	Engine control unit

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
19	SEAT HTR LH	10 A	—
20	SEAT HTR RH	10 A	—
21	RADIO	7.5 A	Audio system
22	P/POINT No.1	15 A	Power outlet

■ After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 311)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer.

■ If there is an overload in the circuits

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

CAUTION

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Scion fuse or equivalent.
- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Scion dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

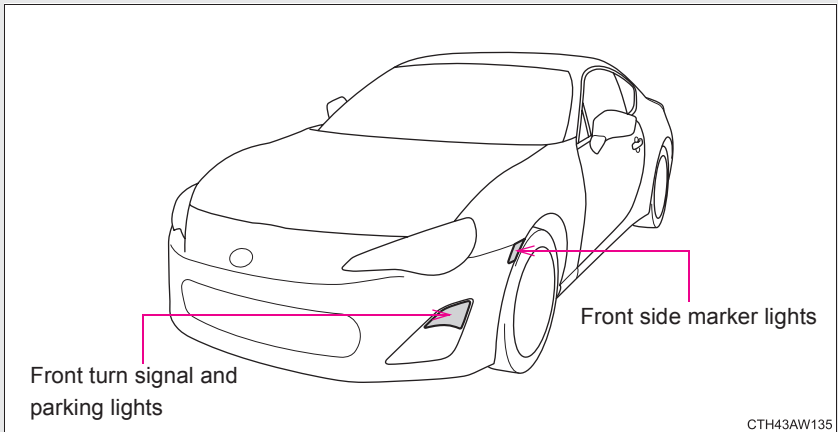
Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Scion dealer.

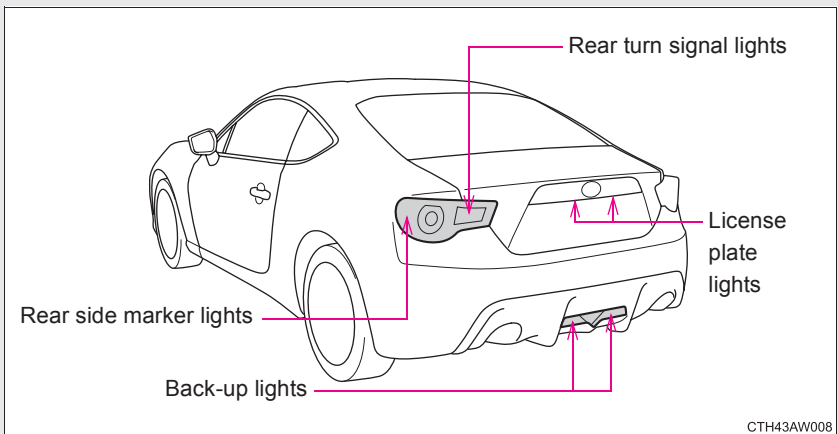
■ Preparing a replacement light bulb

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 389)

■ Front bulb locations

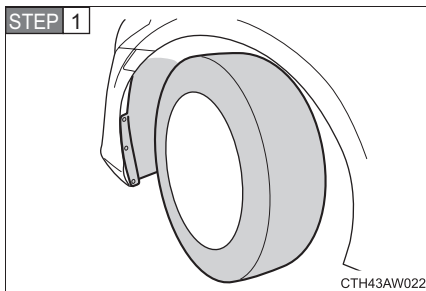


■ Rear bulb locations



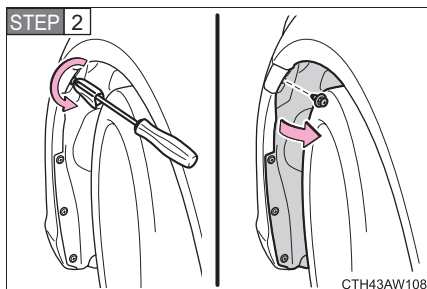
Replacing light bulbs

■ Front side marker lights



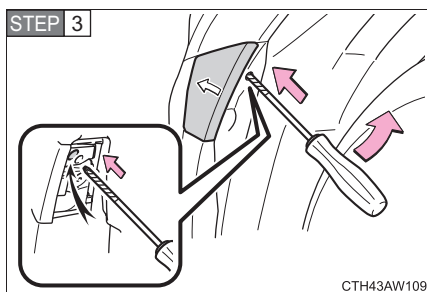
Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the light to be replaced.

Turn the steering wheel to a point that allows your hand to easily fit between the tire and fender liner.



Remove the clips and partly remove the fender liner.

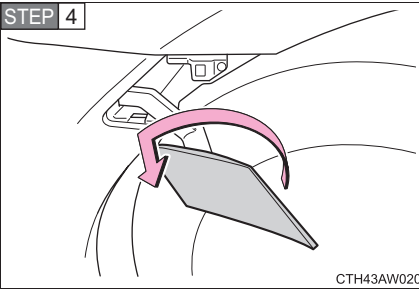
To prevent damage to the vehicle, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



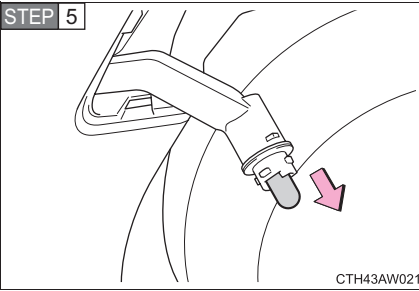
Release the light's claw.

Insert the screwdriver into the hole. While firmly pushing the screwdriver forward, move it towards the inside of the vehicle.

To prevent damage to the vehicle, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with a tape.

STEP 4

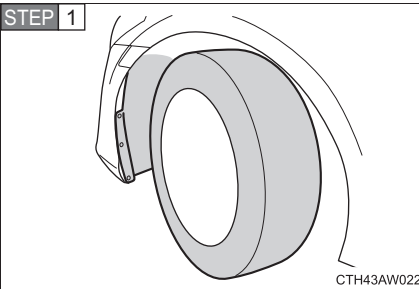
Pull out the lamp and turn the lens counterclockwise.

STEP 5

Remove the light bulb.

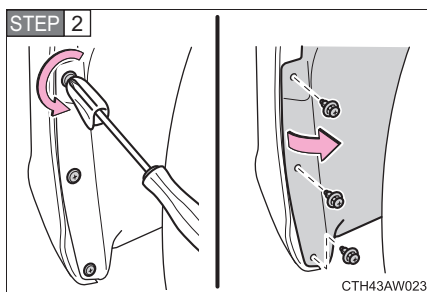
STEP 6 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ Front turn signal/parking lights

STEP 1

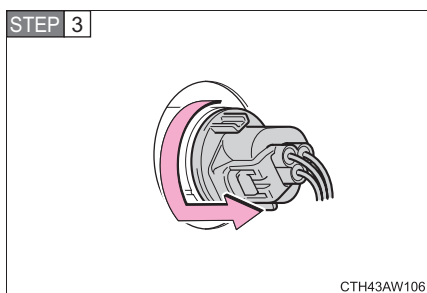
Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the light to be replaced.

Turn the steering wheel to a point that allows your hand to easily fit between the tire and fender liner.

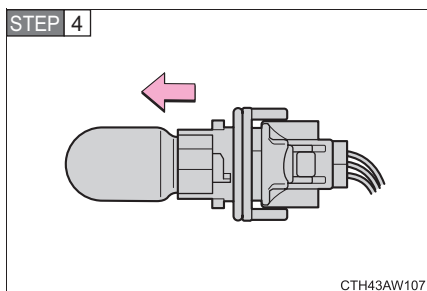


Remove the clips and partly remove the fender liner.

To prevent damage to the vehicle, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



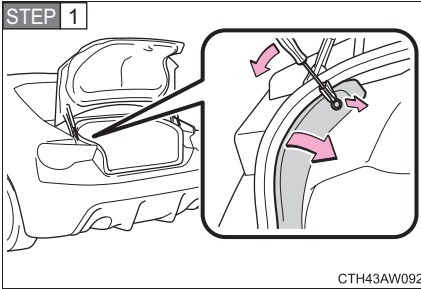
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

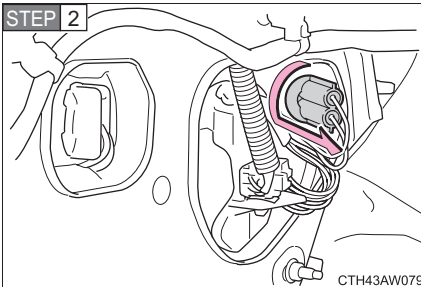
STEP 5 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ Rear side marker lights

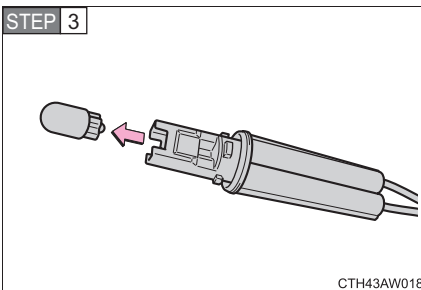


Remove a clip and partly remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the vehicle, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



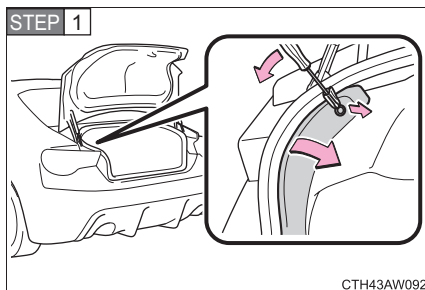
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

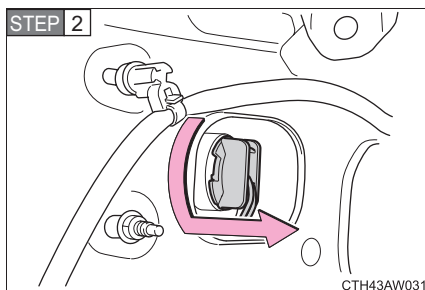
STEP 4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ Rear turn signal lights

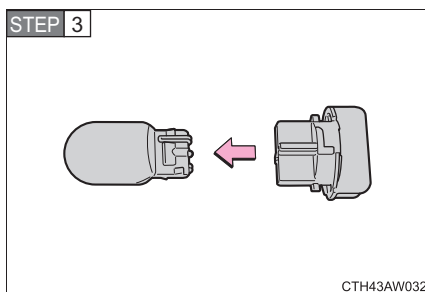


Remove a clip and partly remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the vehicle, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



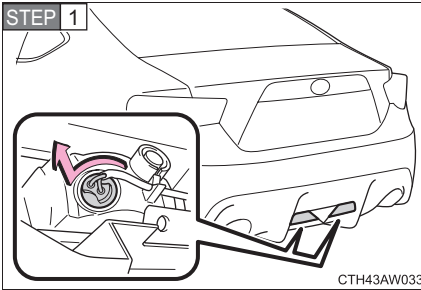
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



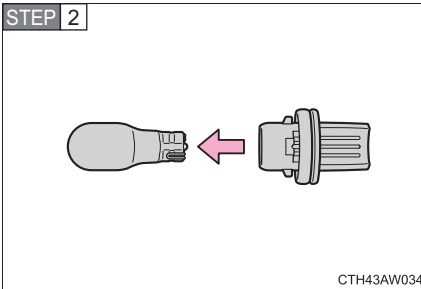
Remove the light bulb.

STEP 4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ Back-up lights



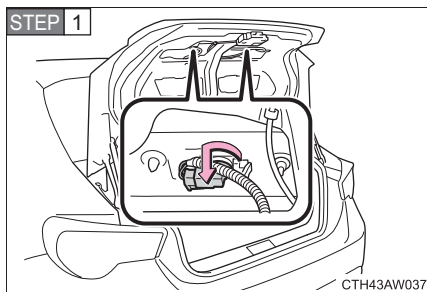
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



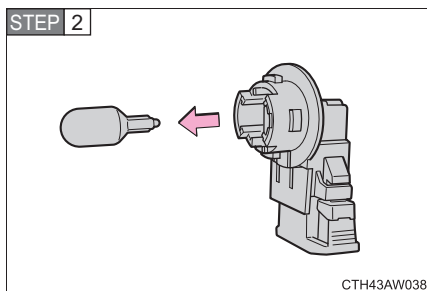
Remove the light bulb.

STEP 3 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ License plate lights



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

STEP 3 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Scion dealer.

- Headlight high and low beams
- Daytime running lights
- Stop/tail lights
- High mounted stoplight

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Scion dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

■ LED light bulbs

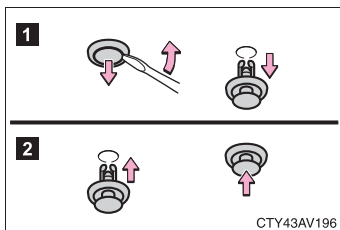
The daytime running lights, stop/tail lights and high mounted stoplight consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Scion dealer to have the light replaced.

■ When replacing light bulbs

Scion recommends that you use genuine Scion products designed for this vehicle.

Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

■ Removing and installing the luggage trim cover clip



1 Removing

2 Installing

 CAUTION

■ **Replacing light bulbs**

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

■ **When changing the back-up lights**

Stop the engine and wait until the exhaust pipe has cooled sufficiently. The lights are located near the exhaust pipe and touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

■ **Discharge headlights**

- Contact your Scion dealer before replacing the discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
An extremely high voltage of 25000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

■ **To prevent damage or fire**

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

When trouble arises

5

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers	322
If your vehicle needs to be towed	323
If you think something is wrong	331
Fuel pump shut off system	332

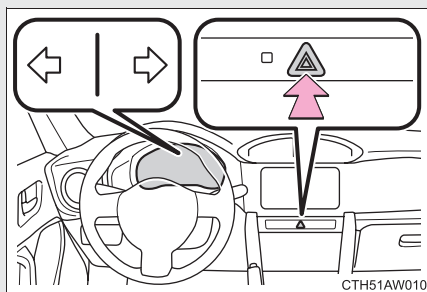
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... ..	333
If you have a flat tire.....	346
If the engine will not start	357
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P	360
If you lose your keys	361
If the electronic key does not operate properly.....	362
If the battery is discharged	366
If your vehicle overheats	370
If the vehicle becomes stuck	373
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency	375

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.



Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

■ Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

5-1. Essential information

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Scion dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

If towing from the rear, the vehicle's front wheels and axles must be in good condition. (→P. 328)

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Scion dealer before towing.

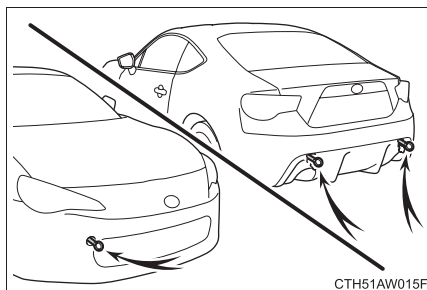
- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

For vehicles with an automatic transmission, only the front towing eyelet may be used.



Towing eyelet

■ Before emergency towing

- STEP 1** Release the parking brake.
- STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to N.
- STEP 3** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY (engine off) or IGNITION ON (engine running) mode.

■ If towing a vehicle

Do not tow another vehicle. If towing a vehicle that has broken down is unavoidable, avoid towing a vehicle that is heavier than your vehicle. Also, do not pull out a vehicle that has fallen into a ditch.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission in emergency towing (vehicles with an automatic transmission)**

Never tow a vehicle from the rear with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle

- When towing this vehicle, make sure to observe the following:
 - Do not use a wire rope
 - Keep vehicle speed below 20 mph (30 km/h) and do not tow for distances over 19 miles (30 km)
 - Tow the vehicle in the forward direction
 - Do not apply rope to the vehicle's suspension and so forth
- Do not tow another vehicle, boat (trailer) and so forth, that is heavier than this vehicle.

■ When towing down a long slope

Use a wheel lift-type or flat bed truck. (→P. 328, 330)

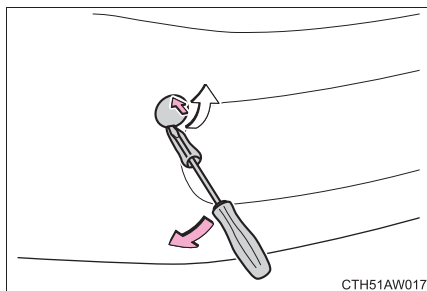
If a wheel lift-type or flat bed truck is not used, the brakes may overheat, leading to poor brake performance.

Installing towing eyelet

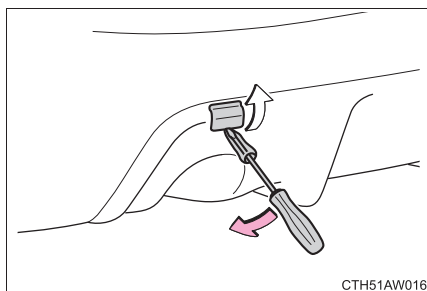
STEP 1 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.

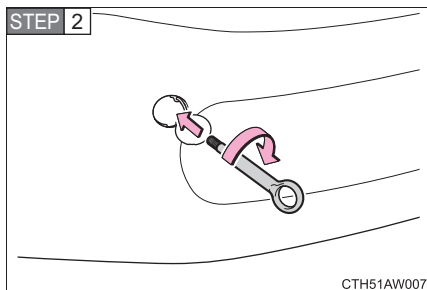
Front



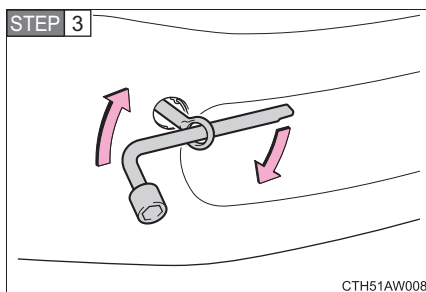
Rear



STEP 2



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

■ Location of the emergency towing eyelet

→P. 346

⚠ CAUTION

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

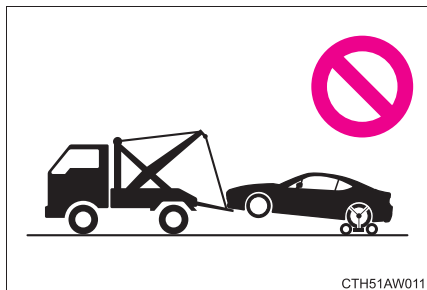
Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.

If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

■ After towing

Always remove the towing eyelet. Failure to do so can cause the SRS airbags to not operate correctly in the event of a frontal collision.

Towing with a sling-type truck



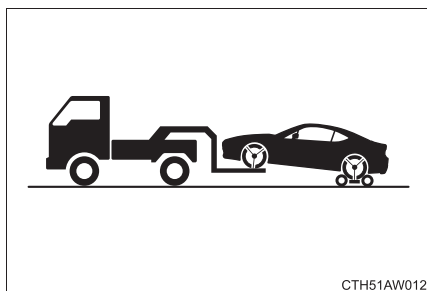
NOTICE

To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

From the front

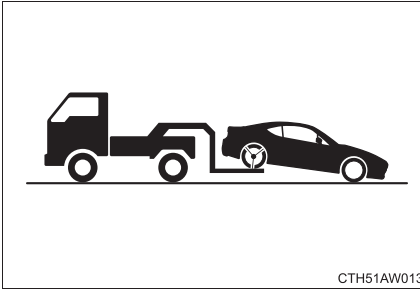


Vehicles with an automatic transmission: Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

Vehicles with a manual transmission: We recommend using a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

When not using a towing dolly, release the parking brake and shift the shift lever to N.

From the rear



Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.

NOTICE

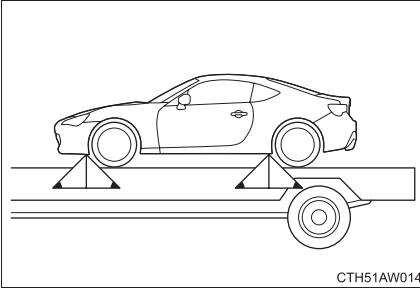
- **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission when towing using a wheel-lift type truck (vehicles with an automatic transmission)**

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.

- **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle from the rear, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed from the rear.

Using a flat bed truck



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Scion dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

5-1. Essential information

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an air-bag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.



NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Scion dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	Brake system warning light • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Scion dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.
	Low engine oil pressure warning light Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	Malfunction indicator lamp Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; • The electronic automatic transmission control system.
	SRS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; • The seat belt pretensioner system; • The front passenger occupant classification system.
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	ABS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; • The brake assist system.
	Electric power steering warning light (warning buzzer) Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system.
 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds.)	Smart key system indicator light Indicates a malfunction in the smart key system.
	Slip indicator Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRAC system

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (Comes on in yellow)	Cruise control indicator light Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is the fuel tank empty?
If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
If it is, tighten it securely.

The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several driving trips.
If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off even after several trips, contact your Scion dealer as soon as possible.

■ **SRS warning light**

→P. 115

■ **Electric power steering warning light (warning buzzer)**

The electric power steering warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound when the voltage is low or the voltage drops.

 CAUTION

■ **When the electric power steering warning light comes on**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed.	Check that both side doors and the trunk are closed.
	Low fuel level warning light Remaining fuel (Approximately 1.8 gal. [7.0 L, 1.5 Imp. gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
 (On the instrument cluster)	Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*¹ Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (On the center panel)	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*² Warns the front passenger to fasten his or her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Tire pressure warning light	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 338) • Flat tire (→P. 346)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Scion dealer.
	When the light comes on after blinking for approximately one minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 339)	Have the system checked by your Scion dealer.
	Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light (if equipped) Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high.	Stop the vehicle in a safe place and shift the shift lever to P. If the light goes off after a little while, the vehicle can be driven. If the light does not go off, contact your Scion dealer.

***1: Driver's seat belt buzzer:**

The driver's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

*2: Front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds once if the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h). If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and warning buzzer to sound, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.

■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 55 psi (380 kPa, 3.87 kgf/cm² or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Scion wheels are used. (Even if you use Scion wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.

■ If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for approximately one minute

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for approximately one minute when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked your Scion dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Scion dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

 CAUTION**■ Maintenance of the tires**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

 CAUTION

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

 NOTICE

■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
Continuous	Continuous	 (Flashes in yellow)	Smart key system indicator light Vehicles with an automatic transmission: The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while any shift position other than P was selected without turning off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.	• Change the shift position to P. • Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
Once	3 times	 (Flashes in yellow)	Smart key system indicator light Vehicles with an automatic transmission: The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while the shift position P was selected without turning off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. Vehicles with a manual transmission: The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while the shift position N was selected without turning off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
Once	3 times	 (Flashes in yellow)	Smart key system indicator light Indicates that a door other than the driver's door has been opened and closed with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in any mode other than off and the electronic key outside of the detection area.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.
Once	Continuous (5 seconds)	 (Flashes in yellow)	Smart key system indicator light An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and lock the doors again.
Once	—	 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds.)	Smart key system indicator light Indicates that the electronic key is not present when attempting to start the engine.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.
Intermittently (7 seconds)	—	 (Flashes in yellow)	Smart key system indicator light An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle.	Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle.
Once	—	 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds.)	Smart key system indicator light Indicates that the electronic key battery is low.	Replace the battery. (→P. 301)

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	 (Flashes quickly in green for 15 seconds.)	Smart key system indicator light Indicates that the steering lock has not been released.	Release the steering lock. (→P. 159)
Once	—	 (Flashes in yellow for 15 seconds.)	Smart key system indicator light The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was pressed once.	Vehicles with an automatic transmission: Touch the electronic key to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch while depressing the brake pedal. Vehicles with a manual transmission: Touch the electronic key to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch while depressing with the clutch pedal.

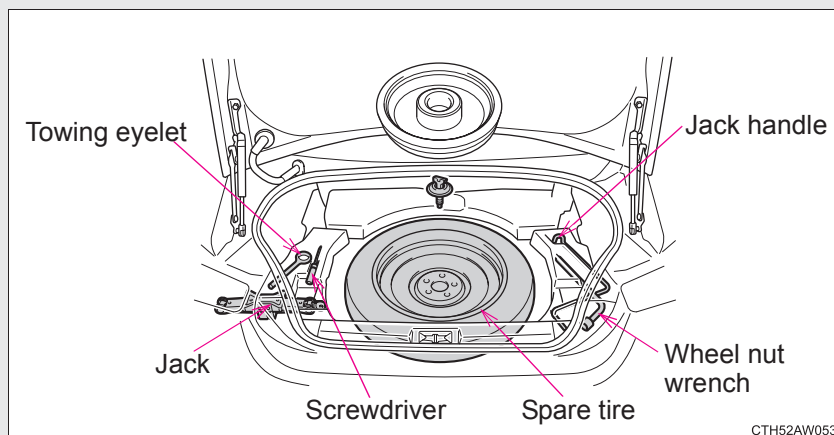
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

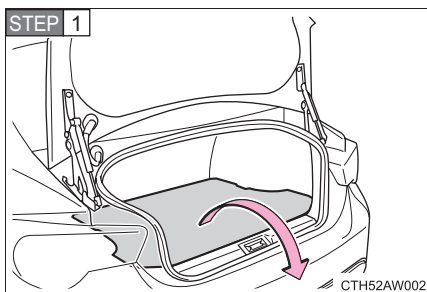
■ Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P (vehicles with an automatic transmission) or R (vehicles with a manual transmission).
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

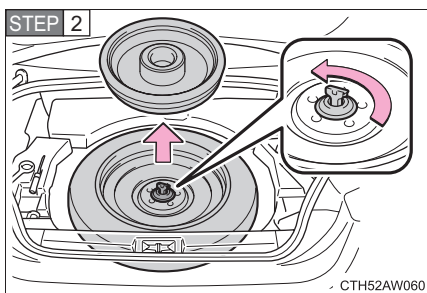
■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



Taking out the spare tire

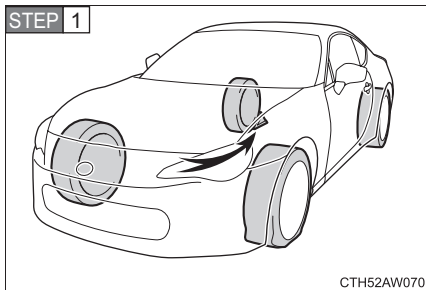


Remove the luggage mat.



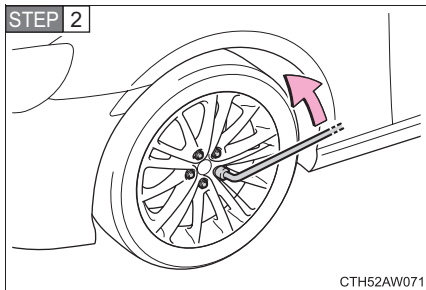
Remove the cover and loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

Replacing a flat tire

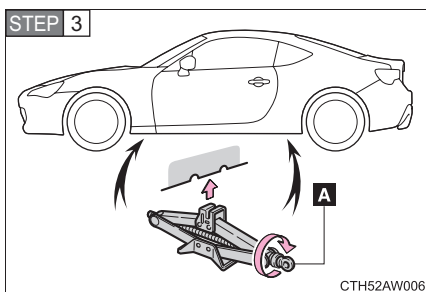


Chock the tires.

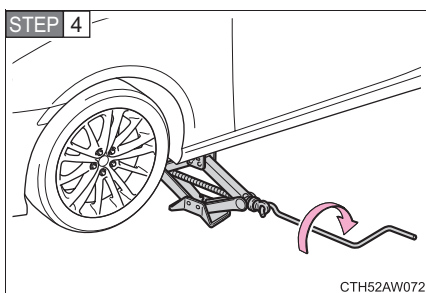
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire



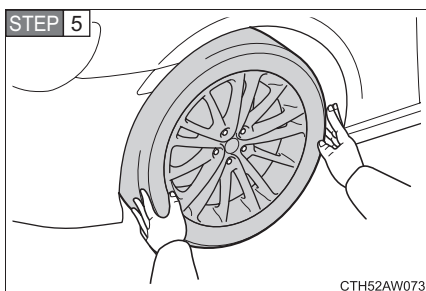
Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.



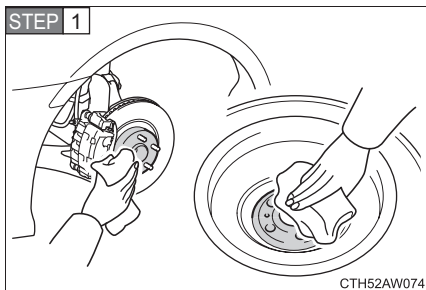
Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

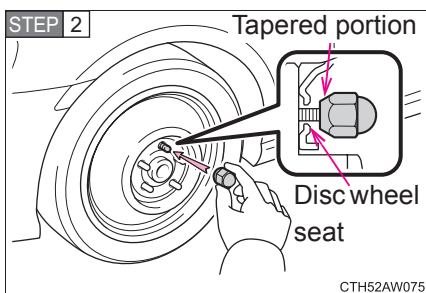
When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Installing the spare tire



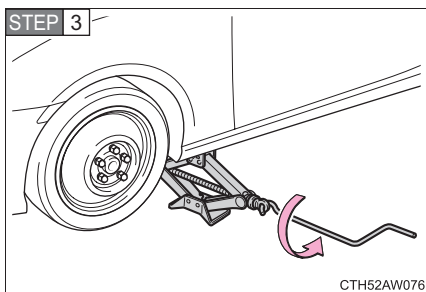
Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

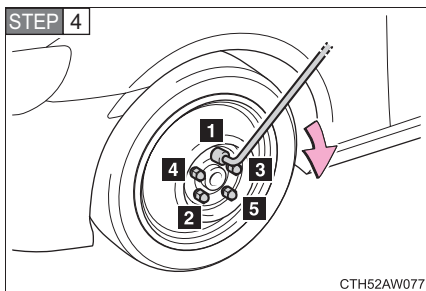


Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
89 ft•lbf (120 N•m, 12.2 kgf•m)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ **The compact spare tire**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” on the tire sidewall.

Use the compact spare tire temporarily only in an emergency.

- Make sure to check the tire pressure of the compact spare tire.
(→P. 388)

■ **When using the compact spare tire**

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be warned. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ **If you have a flat rear tire**

Install the compact spare tire on the front of the vehicle. Perform the following steps.

STEP 1 Replace a front tire with the compact spare tire.

STEP 2 Replace the flat rear tire with the tire removed from the front of the vehicle.

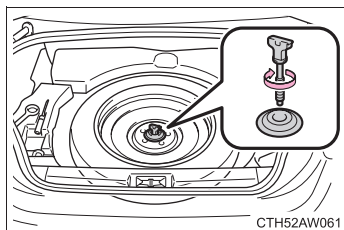
■ **After completing the tire change**

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 285)

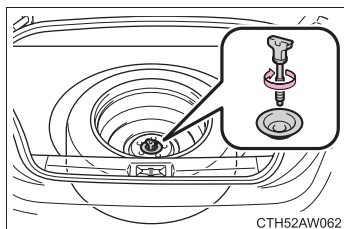
■ **Storing the tire**

Always install the center fastener as shown in the illustration below.

Compact spare tire



Except compact spare tire



 CAUTION**■ Using the tire jack**

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or serious injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

 CAUTION

■ **Replacing a flat tire**

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
 - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 89 ft•lbf (120 N•m, 12.2 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
 - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
 - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer.
 - When installing the wheel nuts, be sure to install them with the tapered ends facing inward. (→P. 296)

 CAUTION**■ When using the compact spare tire**

- Remember that your compact spare tire is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use two compact spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Install the compact spare tire on a front wheel.

■ When storing the compact spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the compact spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 50 mph (80 km/h) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ When the spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & brake assist
- VSC
- TRAC
- EPS
- Cruise control
- LSD

 NOTICE

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ **Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle.**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ **Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.

Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ **When replacing the tires**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Scion dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Scion dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 285)

■ **Stowing the jack**

When stowing the jack in the jack holder, make sure that the part that the jack handle attaches to is pointing towards the inside of the trunk. Failure to do so may damage the vehicle body.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 153), consider each of the following points.

■ **The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.

Refuel the vehicle.

- The engine may be flooded.

Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 153)

- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system.

(→P. 73)

■ **The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 366)

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

■ **The starter motor does not turn over.**

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine.

(→P. 358)

■ **The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 366)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Scion dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is functioning normally:

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Put the shift lever in P.

STEP 3 Set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Scion dealer.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Put the shift lever in N.

STEP 3 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Push and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Scion dealer.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P (vehicles with an automatic transmission)

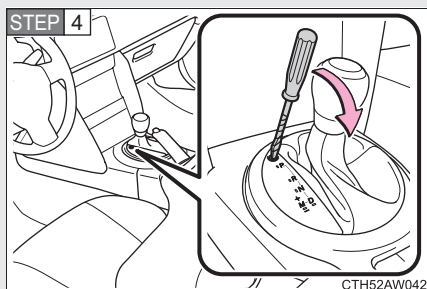
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Scion dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

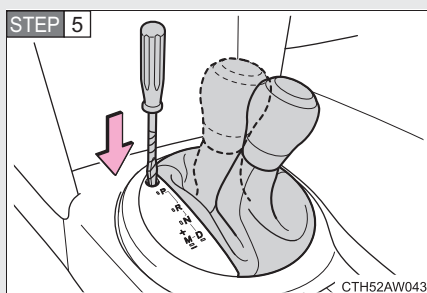
STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.



Pry the cover up with a flat-head screwdriver or equivalent.



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If you lose your keys

New genuine keys can be made by your Scion dealer. Bring the other key and the key number stamped on the key number plate.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the electronic key does not operate properly

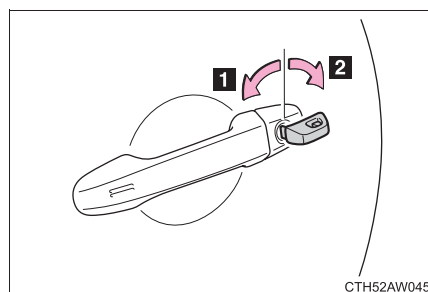
If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 30) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart key system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Unlocking and locking the doors, unlocking the trunk

Use the mechanical key built in to the electronic keys to operate the doors and trunk. (→P. 20)

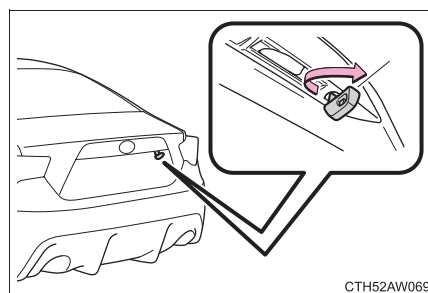
An alarm will sound if the alarm is set when the trunk or doors are unlocked. (→P. 75)

Doors



- 1 Locks driver's door
- 2 Unlocks driver's door

Trunk

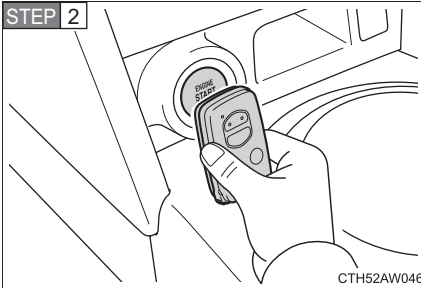


Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.

Starting the engine

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

STEP 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and firmly depress the brake pedal.



Touch the Scion emblem side of the electronic key to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart key system is deactivated in customization setting, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.

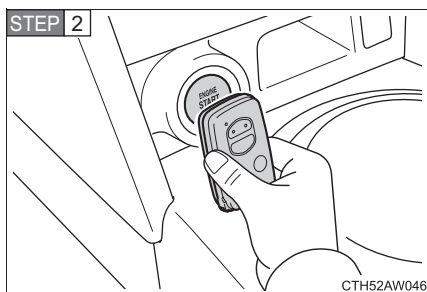
STEP 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that the smart key system indicator light (green) turns on.

STEP 4 Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

In the event that the “ENGINE START STOP” switch still cannot be operated, contact your Scion dealer.

Vehicles with a manual transmission

STEP 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in N and depress the clutch pedal.



Touch the Scion emblem side of the electronic key to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart key system is deactivated in customization setting, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 3 Firmly depress the clutch pedal and check that the smart key system indicator light (green) turns on.

STEP 4 Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

In the event that the “ENGINE START STOP” switch still cannot be operated, contact your Scion dealer.

■ Stopping the engine

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: Shift the shift lever to P and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

Vehicles with a manual transmission: Shift the shift lever to N and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery depletes. (→P. 301)

■ Alarm

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system. If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 75)

■ Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes

Vehicles with an automatic transmission

Release the brake pedal and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in **STEP 3** above. The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 156)

Vehicles with a manual transmission

Release the clutch pedal and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in **STEP 3** above. The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 156)

■ If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked by the smart key system

Lock and unlock the doors by the mechanical key or wireless remote control.

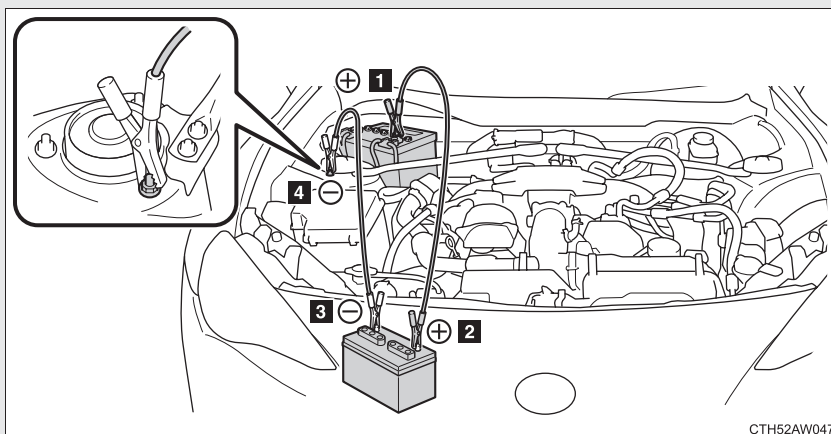
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

You can call your Scion dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle following the steps below.

STEP 1 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedures:



- 1** Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
- 2** Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
- 3** Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
- 4** Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

STEP 2 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 3 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 4 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the vehicle's engine.

STEP 5 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Scion dealer as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ Avoiding a discharged battery

- Turn off the headlights and the air conditioning system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ Precautions when the battery is discharged

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart key system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.
If you are unsure what mode the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.

CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the “+” and “-” terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery.

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

 CAUTION**■ To prevent damage to the vehicle**

Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle as the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.

 NOTICE**■ When handling jumper cables**

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fans or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

■ When closing the doors

While pushing the door glass towards the inside of the vehicle, slowly close the door.

Because the side window open/close function linked to door operation will not operate, the window may interfere with the vehicle body, possibly scratching both the vehicle body and window, or even shattering the window.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If your vehicle overheats

If your engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

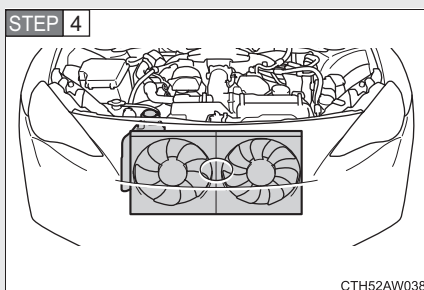
STEP 3 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

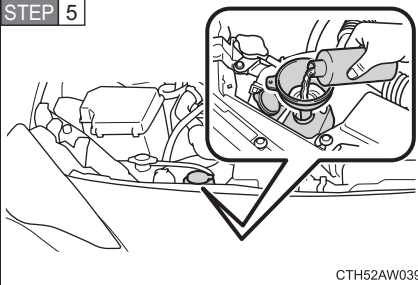
Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument cluster) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine and call your Scion dealer.



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

STEP 5

Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 384)

Have the vehicle checked at the nearest Scion dealer as soon as possible.

■ Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.



NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

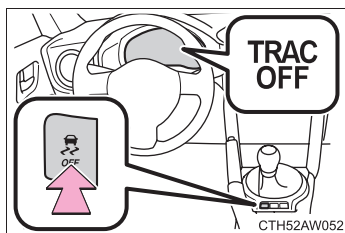
Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant. When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow:

- STEP 1** Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (vehicles with an automatic transmission) or N (vehicles with a manual transmission).
- STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.
- STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.
- STEP 4** Restart the engine.
- STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to the D or R position (vehicles with an automatic transmission) or 1 or R position (vehicles with a manual transmission) and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle



Press  to turn off TRAC.

CAUTION

■ **When attempting to free a stuck vehicle**

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ **When shifting the shift lever**

For vehicles with an automatic transmission, be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **To avoid damage to the transmission and other components**

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

If the shift lever is shifted to N

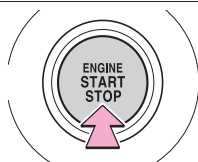
STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more,
or press briefly 3 times or more

CTY52AD212

To stop the engine, press and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

CAUTION

If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

Vehicle specifications

6

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.).....	378
Fuel information	390
Tire information	394

6-2. Customization

Customizable features	407
-----------------------------	-----

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weight

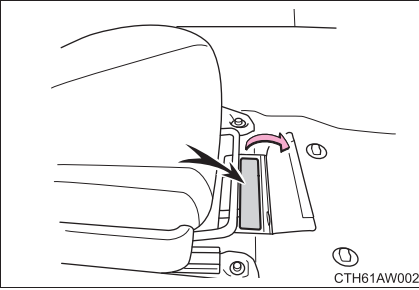
Overall length		166.7 in. (4235 mm)
Overall width		69.9 in. (1775 mm)
Overall height*		52.0 in. (1320 mm)
Wheelbase		101.2 in. (2570 mm)
Tread	Front	59.8 in. (1520 mm)
	Rear	60.6 in. (1540 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		Details are described on the tire and load- ing information label. (→P. 291)

*: Unladen vehicle

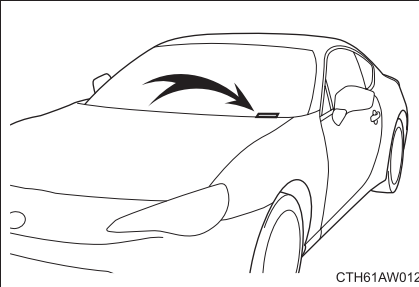
Vehicle identification

■ Vehicle identification number

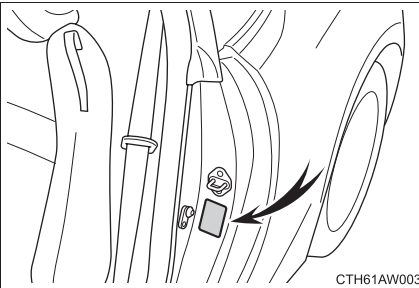
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Scion. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



This number is stamped under the right-hand front seat.



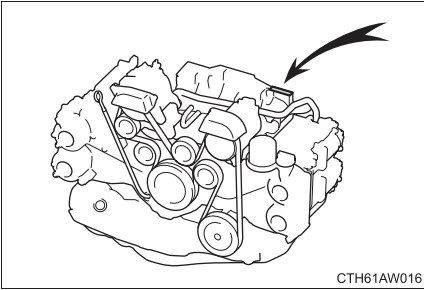
This number is located on the top left of the body panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

■ Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



CTH61AW016

Engine

Model	FA20
Type	Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.39 × 3.39 in. (86.0 × 86.0 mm)
Displacement	121.93 cu. in. (1998 cm ³)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	93 (Research octane number 98) or higher [*]
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	13.2 gal. (50 L, 11.0 Imp. gal.)

^{*}: If unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 93 (98 RON) is not available, unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (95 RON) may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
Without filter	5.5 qt. (5.2 L, 4.6 Imp. qt.)
With filter	5.7 qt. (5.4 L, 4.8 Imp. qt.)

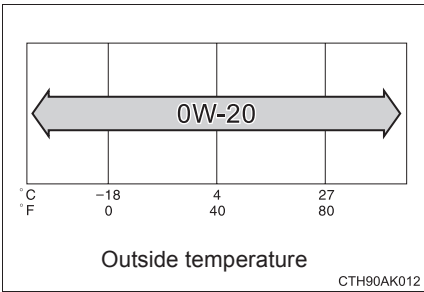
*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Scion vehicle. Use Scion approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC GF-5 multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 0W-20



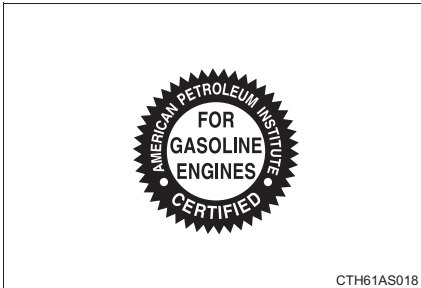
SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather. If SAE 0W-20 is not available, SAE 5W-20 oil may be used. However, it must be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



Cooling system

Capacity	Vehicles with an automatic transmission 7.9 qt. (7.5 L, 6.6 Imp. qt.) Vehicles with a manual transmission 7.6 qt. (7.2 L, 6.3 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following. • “TOYOTA Genuine 50/50 Pre-mixed Super Long Life Coolant BLUE” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO ZXE27HBR8
Gap	0.031 in. (0.8 mm)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

Electrical system

Battery	
Specific gravity reading at 68°F (20°C):	1.250 — 1.290 Fully charged 1.160 — 1.200 Half charged 1.060 — 1.100 Discharged
Charging rates	
Quick charge	15 A max.
Slow charge	5 A max.

Differential

Oil capacity (Reference)	1.20 qt. (1.15 L, 1.01 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	• Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LX • Other gear oil that meets API GL-5 and SAE 75W-85

*: Your Scion vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory. Use Scion approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Scion dealer for further details.



NOTICE

■ Differential gear oil

Using a differential gear oil other than “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LX” may cause occurrences of rattling noises and vibrations while idling and poor fuel consumption.

Never use different brands together.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	7.9 qt. (7.5 L, 6.6 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	TOYOTA Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is provided as a reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Scion dealer.

NOTICE

Using automatic transmission fluid other than “TOYOTA Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

Manual transmission

Gear oil capacity (Reference)	2.3 qt. (2.2 L, 1.9 Imp. qt.)
Gear oil type and viscosity	Use either of the following: • “TOYOTA Genuine MG Gear Oil special II” • Other gear oil that meets API GL-3 and SAE 75W-90 specifications

NOTICE

Manual transmission gear oil

Using a manual transmission gear oil other than “TOYOTA Genuine MG Gear Oil special II” may cause occurrences of rattling noises while idling and poor fuel consumption.

Never use different brands together.

Clutch

Pedal free play	0.2 — 0.6 in. (5 — 15 mm)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

Brakes

Pedal clearance ^{*1}	2.16 in. (55 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.020 — 0.106 in. (0.5 — 2.7 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.06 in. (1.5 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.06 in. (1.5 mm)
Parking brake lever travel ^{*2}	7 — 8 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

^{*1}: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the engine is running.

^{*2}: Parking brake lever travel when pulled up with a force of 45.0 lbf (200 N, 20.4 kgf).

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)
-----------	---------------------------

Tires and wheels

Type A

Tire size	215/45R17 87W, T135/80D16 101M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm ² or bar) Rear: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm ² or bar) Spare: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar)
Wheel size	17 × 7 J, 16 × 4T (compact spare)
Wheel nut torque	89 ft•lbf (120 N•m, 12.2 kgf•m)

Type B

Tire size	P215/45R17 87V, T135/80D16 101M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm ² or bar) Rear: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm ² or bar) Spare: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar)
Wheel size	17 × 7 J, 16 × 4T (compact spare)
Wheel nut torque	89 ft•lbf (120 N•m, 12.2 kgf•m)

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights Low/high beam	D4S	35	A
	Front side marker lights	#194	3.8	C
	Front turn signal/parking lights	7444NA	28/8	B
	License plate lights	W5W	5	C
	Rear turn signal lights	WY21W	21	B
	Back-up lights	W16W	16	C
	Rear side marker lights	W5W	5	C
Interior	Trunk light	W5W	5	B
	Interior light	—	10	D

- A: D4S discharge bulbs
B: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
C: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
D: Double end bulbs

6-1. Specifications

Fuel information

The engine is designed to operate at maximum performance using unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 93 (98 RON) or higher. If an octane rating of 93 (98 RON) fuel is not readily available in your area, unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (95 RON) may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability. However, you may notice a slight decrease in maximum engine performance and you may hear some knocking (pinking) of an engine while using an octane rating of 91 (95 RON) fuel. Use of an octane rating of 91 (95 RON) fuel will not affect your warranty coverage.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Scion has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Scion dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Scion dealer.

■ Fuel octane rating

This octane rating is the average of the Research Octane and Motor Octane numbers and is commonly referred to as the Anti Knock Index.

Using a gasoline with a lower octane rating can cause persistent and heavy knocking, which can damage the engine. Do not be concerned if your vehicle sometimes knocks lightly when you drive up a hill or when you accelerate. Contact your Scion dealer if you use a fuel with the specified octane rating and your vehicle knocks heavily or persistently.

■ Gasoline for California-certified LEV

If your vehicle was certified to California's low emission vehicle (LEV) standards as indicated on the underhood tune-up label, it is designed to optimize engine and emission performance with gasoline that meets the clean burning low-sulfur California gasoline specifications. If you live in any other state than California, your vehicle will operate on gasoline meeting Federal specifications. Gasoline sold outside California is permitted to have higher sulfur levels, which may affect the performance of your vehicle's catalytic converter and may produce a sulfur exhaust odor or smell. Scion recommends that you try a different brand of unleaded gasoline having lower sulfur to determine if the problem is fuel related before returning your vehicle to an authorized dealer for service.

■ Scion recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

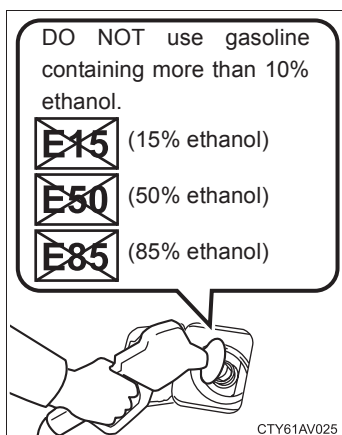
- Scion recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the U.S.A. contains minimum detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems, per EPA's lowest additives concentration program.
- Scion strongly recommends the use of Top Tier Detergent Gasoline. For more information on Top Tier Detergent Gasoline and a list of marketers, please go to the official website www.toptiergas.com.

■ Scion recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Scion recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ Scion does not recommend blended gasoline



- Use only gasoline containing a maximum of 10% ethanol.

DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 10% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E15, E30, E50, E85 (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol).

- If you use gasohol in your Scion, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 93.
- Scion DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ **Scion does not recommend gasoline containing MMT**

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Scion DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Scion dealer for service.

 NOTICE

■ **Notice on fuel quality**

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than the level previously stated will cause persistent heavy knocking.
At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel-related poor driveability**

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ **When refueling with gasohol**

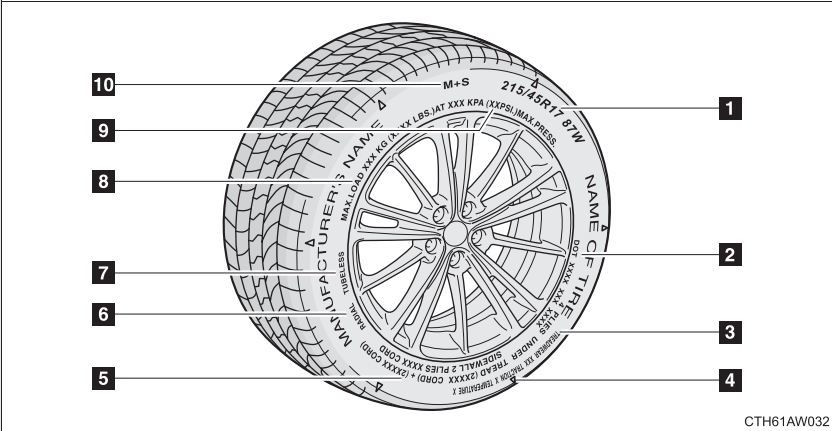
Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

6-1. Specifications

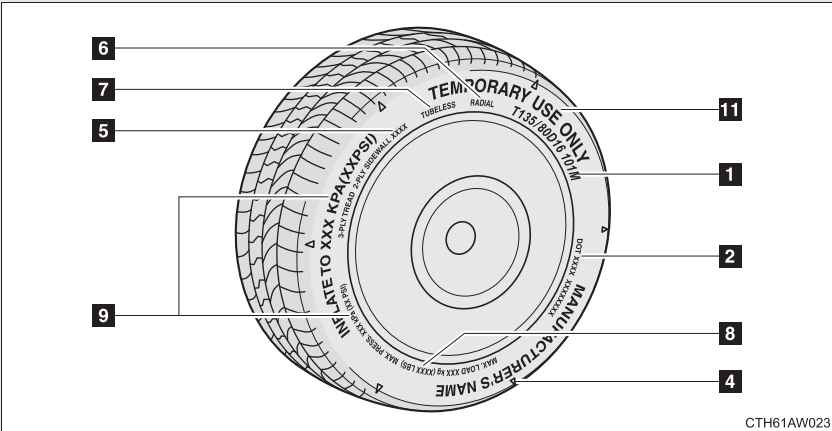
Tire information

Typical tire symbols

Standard tire



Compact spare tire



- 1 Tire size (→P. 397)
- 2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 396)
- 3 Uniform tire quality grading
For details, see “Uniform Tire Quality Grading” that follows.
- 4 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 284)

5 Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

6 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has “RADIAL” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “RADIAL” is a bias-ply tire.

7 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

8 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 287)**9** Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 388)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

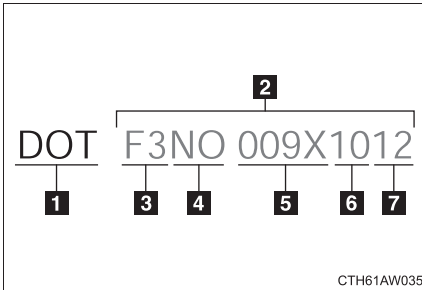
10 Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 287)

An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.

11 “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” (→P. 351)

A compact spare tire is identified by the phrase “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” molded into its sidewall. This tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

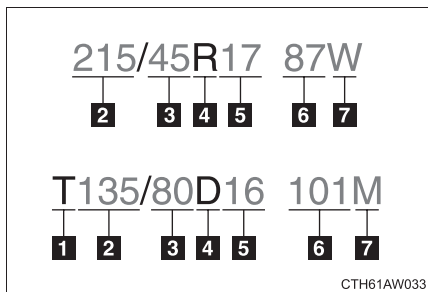


- 1** DOT symbol*
- 2** Tire Identification Number (TIN)
- 3** Tire manufacturer's identification mark
- 4** Tire size code
- 5** Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
- 6** Manufacturing week
- 7** Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

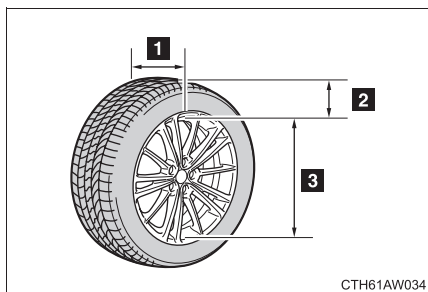
■ Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

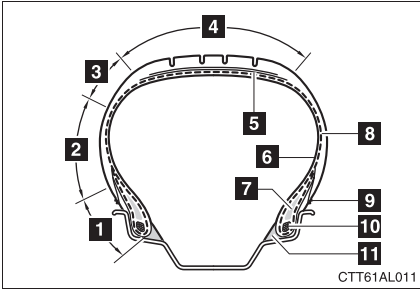
- 1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
- 2 Section width (millimeters)
- 3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
- 4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- 5 Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6 Load index (2 or 3 digits)
- 7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

■ Tire dimensions



- 1 Section width
- 2 Tire height
- 3 Wheel diameter

Tire section names



- 1** Bead
- 2** Sidewall
- 3** Shoulder
- 4** Tread
- 5** Belt
- 6** Inner liner
- 7** Reinforcing rubber
- 8** Carcass
- 9** Rim lines
- 10** Bead wires
- 11** Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Scion vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Scion dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use. Performance may differ significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

■ Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

Grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades of a tire assume that it is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer.
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight

Tire related term	Meaning
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two

Tire related term	Meaning
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or inner-liner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass
Intended outboard sidewall	(a)The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b)The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less.
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall

Tire related term	Meaning
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by your Scion dealer.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Scion dealer.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart key system (→P. 23)	Smart key system	On	Off
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	On	Off
	Operation buzzer volume	Level 5	Level 0 to 7
	Number of permissible times of continuous smart lock	Twice	Unlimited
Wireless remote control (→P. 37)	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps	Both side doors unlocked in one step
	Automatic door lock function to be activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 37)	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	30 seconds
			120 seconds
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	On	Off
	Operation buzzer volume	Level 5	Level 0 to 7
	Door lock buzzer	On	Off
	Trunk unlocking function	On	Off
	Trunk unlocking operation	Push and hold (short)	Push and hold (long)
			One short push
			Two short pushes
	Panic function	On	Off
	Vehicle finder function	Off	On
Alarm (→P. 75)	Operation when doors are unlocked using the mechanical key	Off	On
Automatic light control system (→P. 188)	Light sensor sensitivity	±0%	-40% to +40%
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 second
			60 seconds
			90 seconds

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Rear window defogger (→P. 229)	Time elapsed before the rear window defogger turn off	15 minutes	Continue
Illumination (→P. 233)	Time elapsed before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off
	Operation after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off	On	Off
	Interior light illumination upon approach	On	Off
	Interior light illumination	On	Off

For owners

7

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners	412
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)	413
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)	416

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Scion, a marque of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-331-4331).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Scion, a marque of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

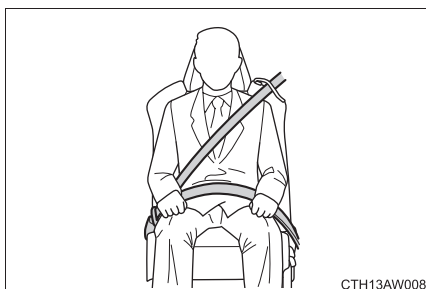
To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

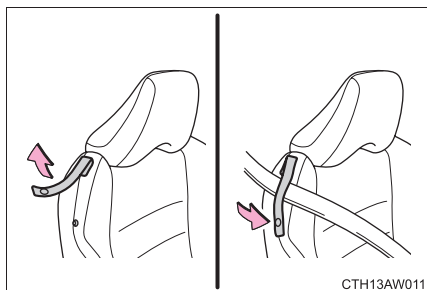
See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation correcte des ceintures de sécurité



- Déroulez la sangle diagonale de telle sorte qu'elle passe bien sur l'épaule, sans pour autant être en contact avec le cou ou glisser de l'épaule.
- Placez la sangle abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier de siège. Asseyez-vous le dos le plus droit possible et calez-vous bien dans le siège.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Guide de ceinture de sécurité avant



Pour permettre le déroulement facile de la ceinture de sécurité, passez-la dans le guide.

Lorsque vous accédez aux sièges arrière ou en descendez, sortez la ceinture de sécurité de son guide.

Entretien et soin

■ Ceintures de sécurité

Nettoyez avec un chiffon ou une éponge humectée d'eau savonneuse tiède. Vérifiez régulièrement que les ceintures ne sont pas effilochées, entaillées ou exagérément usées.

ATTENTION

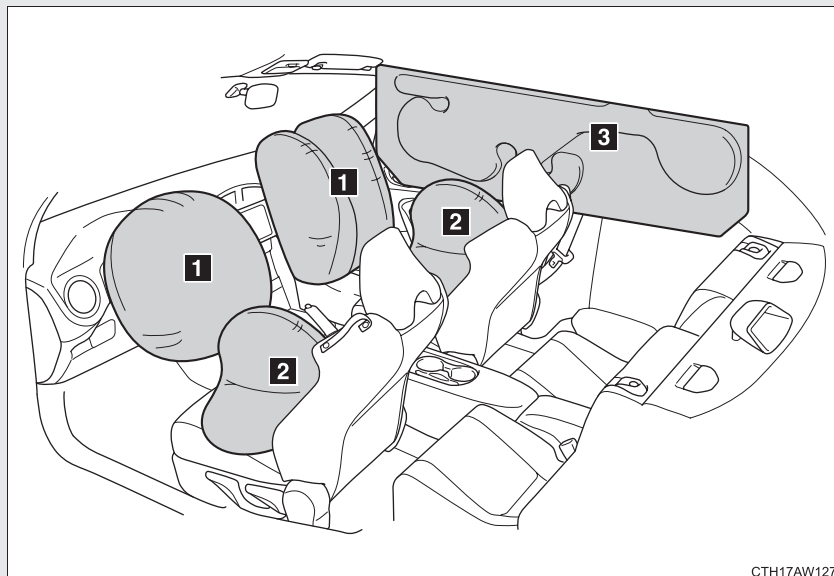
■ Détérioration et usure des ceintures de sécurité

- Évitez d'abîmer les ceintures de sécurité en coinçant dans la porte la sangle, le pêne ou la boucle.
- Inspectez les ceintures de sécurité périodiquement. Contrôlez qu'elles ne sont pas entaillées, effilochées et que leurs ancrages ne sont pas desserrés. Remplacez immédiatement toute ceinture de sécurité endommagée. Une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse n'apporte aucune garantie de protection de l'occupant en cas d'accident.
- Vérifiez que la ceinture est correctement attachée et qu'elle n'est pas vrillée.
Si la ceinture de sécurité ne fonctionne pas correctement, contactez immédiatement votre concessionnaire Scion.
- Remplacez le siège avec la ceinture au cas où votre véhicule aurait été impliqué dans un accident sérieux, même en l'absence de dommages visibles.
- N'essayez pas d'installer, de déposer, de modifier, de démonter ou de mettre au rebut les ceintures de sécurité. Faites effectuer les réparations nécessaires par votre concessionnaire Scion. Une mauvaise manipulation des prétensionneurs peut en altérer le fonctionnement correct, et entraîner un risque de blessures graves, voire mortelles.

SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of SRS airbag instructions extracted from the SRS airbag section in this manual.

See the SRS airbag section for more detailed SRS airbag instructions in English.



Modèles équipés de coussins gonflables SRS et de ceintures de sécurité pour le conducteur, le passager avant et les passagers des sièges arrière côté vitres

Votre véhicule est équipé d'un système de retenue supplémentaire en plus de la ceinture de sécurité à chacun des sièges avant et à chacun des sièges arrière côté fenêtres. Le système de retenue supplémentaire (SRS) consiste en six coussins gonflables. Ils sont configurés comme suit.

- 1** Coussins gonflables frontaux du conducteur et du passager avant
- 2** Coussins gonflables latéraux du conducteur et du passager avant
- 3** Coussins gonflables rideau (pour le conducteur, le passager avant et les passagers arrière côté fenêtres)

Ces coussins gonflables SRS ne sont conçus que comme compléments à la protection première fournie par les ceintures de sécurité.

Le système commande également les prétensionneurs de ceintures de sécurité avant. Pour obtenir des instructions sur le fonctionnement et des avis de précautions concernant le prétensionneur de ceinture de sécurité, reportez-vous à "Prétensionneurs de ceintures de sécurité".

ATTENTION

■ Coussin gonflable SRS

- Afin de garantir la meilleure protection possible dans l'éventualité d'un accident, le conducteur et tous les passagers du véhicule doivent toujours porter leur ceinture de sécurité lors de la conduite du véhicule. Le système de coussins gonflables SRS n'est conçu que comme un complément à la protection première fournie par les ceintures de sécurité. Il ne dispense pas de la nécessité du port de la ceinture de sécurité. Il offre la meilleure protection combinée, en complément du port de la ceinture de sécurité, en cas d'accident grave.

Ne pas porter la ceinture de sécurité augmente les risques de blessures graves ou mortelles lors d'un accident, même lorsque le véhicule est équipé du système de coussins gonflables SRS.

Pour obtenir des instructions et des avis de précautions concernant le système de ceintures de sécurité, reportez-vous à "Ceintures de sécurité".

- Ne vous asseyez pas et ne vous penchez pas de façon à être inutilement proche du coussin gonflable SRS. Parce que le coussin gonflable SRS se déploie à une vitesse considérable - plus vite qu'un clignement d'œil - et avec une puissance conçue pour protéger des collisions à haute vitesse, la puissance de déploiement d'un coussin gonflable peut blesser un occupant dont le corps est trop proche du coussin gonflable SRS.

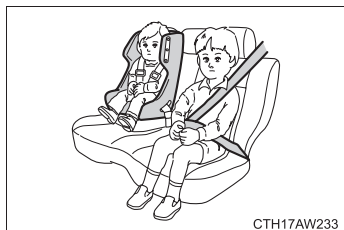
Il est également important de porter votre ceinture de sécurité pour prévenir les blessures qui peuvent survenir lorsque le coussin gonflable SRS entre en contact avec un occupant qui ne serait pas assis dans la position adéquate, tel qu'un occupant qui aurait été projeté vers l'avant lors du freinage qui précède l'accident.

Même lorsque les occupants sont correctement installés, il reste le risque qu'un occupant soit légèrement blessé, par abrasions ou ecchymoses au niveau du visage ou des bras, en raison de la puissance de déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS.

ATTENTION

■ Coussin gonflable SRS

- Les coussins gonflables SRS se déploient à une vitesse et avec une puissance considérables. Les occupants qui ne sont pas installés en position correcte lorsque le coussin gonflable SRS se déploie peuvent subir des blessures très graves. Parce que le coussin gonflable SRS nécessite un espace suffisant pour se déployer, le conducteur doit toujours se tenir droit et bien enfoncé dans son siège, aussi éloigné que possible du volant tout en gardant le contrôle total du véhicule. Le passager avant doit reculer son siège aussi loin que possible, se tenir droit et bien enfoncé dans son siège.
- Ne placez aucun objet, ni par-dessus, ni à proximité du couvercle du coussin gonflable SRS ou entre le coussin gonflable SRS et vous. Si le coussin gonflable SRS se déploie, ces objets pourraient empêcher son bon fonctionnement et être projetés à l'intérieur du véhicule, ce qui peut entraîner des blessures.



- Placez les enfants de 12 ans et moins sur la banquette arrière, correctement attachés en toutes circonstances. Le coussin gonflable SRS se déploie avec une vitesse et une force considérables, et peut blesser et même tuer les enfants, particulièrement s'ils ont 12 ans ou moins et qu'ils ne sont pas ou mal retenus. Parce que les enfants sont plus légers et plus faibles que les adultes, le risque qu'ils courent d'être blessés par le déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS est plus important.

ATTENTION

■ Coussin gonflable SRS

Pour cette raison, nous recommandons fortement que TOUS les enfants (y compris ceux dans des sièges enfants, ou qui sont trop grands pour les sièges de sécurité enfants) s'assoient dans un siège de la banquette ARRIÈRE et soient correctement attachés dans un siège de sécurité enfant ou avec une ceinture de sécurité, selon le dispositif adapté pour l'âge, la taille et le poids de l'enfant.

Attachez TOUS les types de sièges de sécurité enfant (y compris les sièges enfant de type face à la route) sur les sièges ARRIÈRE, en toutes circonstances.

Les statistiques d'accidentologie indiquent que les enfants sont plus en sécurité lorsqu'ils sont correctement attachés à l'arrière plutôt qu'à l'avant.

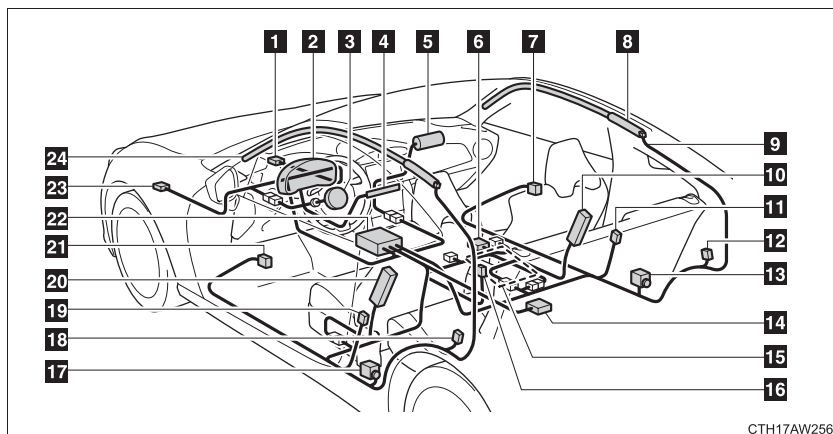
Pour obtenir des instructions et avis de précautions concernant les sièges de sécurité enfant, reportez-vous à la section "Sièges de sécurité enfant".

ATTENTION

■ Coussin gonflable SRS

- N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE DE SÉCURITÉ ENFANT DE TYPE DOS À LA ROUTE DANS LE SIÈGE AVANT. LE FAIRE POURRAIT CAUSER DES BLESSURES GRAVES VOIRE MORTELLES À L'ENFANT EN PLAÇANT LA TÊTE DE L'ENFANT TROP PRÈS DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE SRS.
- N'autorisez jamais un enfant à se tenir debout ou à s'agenouiller dans le siège du passager avant, et ne tenez jamais un enfant sur vos genoux ou dans vos bras. Le coussin gonflable SRS se déploie avec une force considérable et peut blesser ou même tuer l'enfant.
- Lorsque le coussin gonflable SRS se déploie, de la fumée se dégage. Cette fumée peut provoquer des problèmes de respiration pour les personnes présentant des antécédents asthmatiques ou d'autres difficultés respiratoires. Si vous ou vos passagers éprouvez une difficulté à respirer après le déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS, prenez, ou faites-leur prendre l'air rapidement.
- Un coussin gonflable SRS qui se déploie libère un gaz chaud. Les occupants peuvent se brûler s'ils entrent directement en contact avec le gaz chaud.

Composants du système de coussins gonflables SRS



CTH17AW256

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Capteur secondaire avant (côté droit) | 8 Module de coussin gonflable rideau (côté droit) |
| 2 Témoin d'avertissement SRS | 9 Câblage de coussin gonflable |
| 3 Module de coussin gonflable frontal (côté conducteur) (à deux étapes) | 10 Module de coussin gonflable latéral (côté passager avant) |
| 4 Témoin MARCHE et ARRÊT du coussin gonflable frontal du passager avant (au centre du tableau de bord) | 11 Capteur de coussin gonflable latéral (montant central, côté droit) |
| 5 Module de coussin gonflable frontal (côté passager avant) (à deux étapes) | 12 Capteur de coussin gonflable rideau (emplacement roue arrière, côté droit) |
| 6 Module de commande de détection d'occupant de siège du passager avant | 13 Prétensionneur de ceinture de sécurité (côté passager avant) |
| 7 Capteur d'impact de porte (côté droit) | 14 Capteur satellite de sécurité (sous le milieu de la banquette arrière) |

- 15** Capteur de système de classification d'occupant de siège du passager avant
- 16** Bouton de boucle de ceinture de sécurité (côté passager avant)
- 17** Prétensionneur de ceinture de sécurité (côté conducteur)
- 18** Capteur de coussin gonflable rideau (emplacement roue arrière, côté gauche)
- 19** Capteur de coussin gonflable latéral (montant central, côté gauche)
- 20** Module de coussin gonflable latéral (côté conducteur)
- 21** Capteur d'impact de porte (côté gauche)
- 22** Module de contrôle de coussin gonflable (capteurs d'impacts compris)
- 23** Capteur secondaire avant (côté gauche)
- 24** Module de coussin gonflable rideau (côté gauche)

Votre véhicule est équipé de COUSSINS GONFLABLES AVANCÉS conçus selon les normes de sécurité américaines applicables aux véhicules à moteur (FMVSS208). Le système de coussin gonflable contrôle la puissance de déploiement des coussins gonflables pour le conducteur et le passager avant. Le système de coussin gonflable du passager avant comprend le module de contrôle de détection d'occupant de siège du passager avant, etc.

Les principaux éléments du système de coussins gonflables SRS sont illustrés ci-dessus. Le système de coussins gonflables SRS est contrôlé par le module de commande du coussin gonflable. Le module de commande de coussin gonflable consiste en un capteur de coussin gonflable.

Dans certains cas de chocs frontaux ou latéraux importants, le système de coussins gonflables SRS déclenche les dispositifs de gonflage. Le déploiement rapide des coussins gonflables est obtenu au moyen d'une réaction chimique dans les dispositifs de gonflage, qui produit un gaz inoffensif permettant d'amortir le mouvement des occupants.

ATTENTION

■ En cas de déploiement des coussins gonflables SRS

Ne touchez pas à mains nues les composants du système de coussins gonflables SRS situés au niveau du volant et du tableau de bord juste après le déploiement. Cela pourrait entraîner des brûlures, parce qu'à la suite du déploiement, ces composants peuvent être très chauds.

■ Précautions concernant les sièges de sécurité enfant

N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE DE SÉCURITÉ ENFANT DE TYPE DOS À LA ROUTE SUR LE SIÈGE DU PASSAGER AVANT, MÊME SI LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE SRS FRONTAL DU PASSAGER AVANT EST DÉACTIVÉ. Veillez à l'installer correctement sur la banquette ARRIÈRE. De même, il est fortement recommandé que tout siège de sécurité enfant de type face à la route ou siège rehausseur soit installé sur la banquette ARRIÈRE, et que même les enfants trop grands pour utiliser un siège de sécurité enfant s'assoient sur la banquette ARRIÈRE. Un enfant assis sur le siège du passager avant pourrait être tué ou gravement blessé si le coussin gonflable SRS frontal du passager avant se déployait. La banquette ARRIÈRE est l'endroit où les enfants sont le plus en sécurité.

Coussin gonflable latéral SRS et coussin gonflable rideau SRS

Les coussins gonflables latéraux SRS sont stockés côté portière de chaque dossier de siège, à un emplacement qui comporte une étiquette “SRS AIRBAG”.

Dans le cas d'une collision modérée à sévère, le coussin gonflable latéral SRS sur le côté de l'impact du véhicule se déploie entre l'occupant et la partie basse de la portière, et complémente la ceinture de sécurité en réduisant l'impact sur la poitrine et la taille de l'occupant. Le coussin gonflable latéral SRS ne fonctionne que pour les occupants des sièges avant.

Le coussin gonflable rideau SRS situé de chaque côté de l'habitacle est logé du côté toit (entre le montant avant et un point au-dessus du siège arrière). Une inscription “SRS AIRBAG” est située en haut de chaque montant avant et arrière.

Lors d'une collision latérale modérée à sévère, le coussin gonflable rideau SRS, situé du côté où le véhicule est percuté, se déploie entre l'occupant et la vitre latérale et intervient en complément de la ceinture de sécurité, en réduisant l'impact sur la tête de l'occupant.

ATTENTION

■ En cas de déploiement des coussins gonflables SRS

Ne touchez pas à mains nues les composants du système de coussins gonflables latéraux SRS situés au niveau du dossier du siège avant juste après le déploiement. Cela pourrait entraîner des brûlures, parce qu'à la suite du déploiement, ces composants peuvent être très chauds.

Après le déploiement, ne touchez aucune partie du système de coussins gonflables rideau SRS (entre le montant avant et un point situé au-dessus de la banquette arrière). Cela pourrait entraîner des brûlures, parce qu'à la suite du déploiement, ces composants peuvent être très chauds.

■ Précautions relatives au coussin gonflable latéral SRS et au coussin gonflable rideau SRS

Le coussin gonflable latéral SRS et le coussin gonflable rideau SRS ne sont conçus que comme complément à la protection première dispensée par la ceinture de sécurité. Ils ne suppriment en aucun cas la nécessité du port de la ceinture de sécurité. Il est également important de porter votre ceinture de sécurité pour éviter les blessures qui peuvent survenir lorsque l'occupant n'est pas assis dans une position correcte et droite.

ATTENTION

■ Précautions concernant les coussins gonflables SRS

Respectez les précautions suivantes concernant les coussins gonflables SRS.

Autrement, des blessures graves, voire mortelles, pourraient s'ensuivre.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité correctement.

Les coussins gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs complémentaires à utiliser avec les ceintures de sécurité.

- Le coussin gonflable SRS conducteur se déploie avec une violence considérable, qui peut causer des blessures graves, voire mortelles, si le conducteur se trouve très près du coussin gonflable.

L'autorité fédérale chargée de la sécurité routière aux États-Unis, la "NHTSA" (National Highway Traffic Safety Administration) conseille:

Sachant que la zone de danger pour le coussin gonflable conducteur se trouve dans les premiers 2 à 3 in. (50 à 75 mm) de déploiement, vous placer à 10 in. (250 mm) de votre coussin gonflable conducteur vous garantit une marge de sécurité suffisante. Cette distance est à mesurer entre le centre du volant et le sternum. Si vous êtes assis à moins de 10 in. (250 mm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de plusieurs façons:

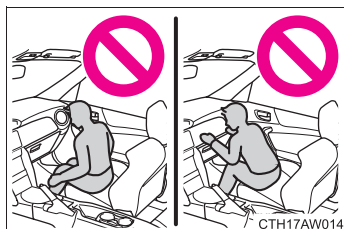
- Reculez votre siège le plus possible, de manière à pouvoir encore atteindre confortablement les pédales.
- Inclinez légèrement le dossier du siège. Bien que la conception des véhicules soit variable, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent être à 10 in. (250 mm) de distance, même lorsque le siège conducteur est complètement avancé, en inclinant quelque peu le dossier du siège vers l'arrière. Si vous avez des difficultés à voir la route après avoir incliné votre siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et antidérapant pour vous rehausser ou remontez le siège si votre véhicule est équipé de cette fonction.
- Si votre volant est réglable, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela a pour effet d'orienter le coussin gonflable en direction de votre poitrine plutôt que de votre tête et de votre cou.

Réglez votre siège selon les recommandations de la NHTSA ci-dessus, tout en conservant le contrôle des pédales, du volant et la vue des commandes du tableau de bord.

ATTENTION

■ Précautions concernant les coussins gonflables SRS

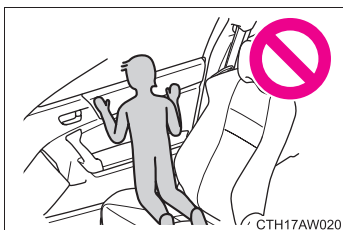
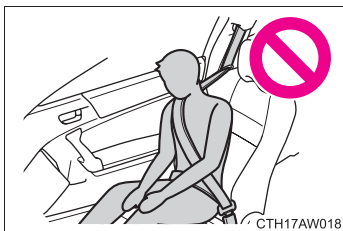
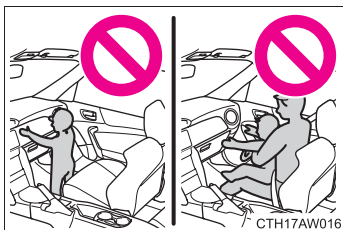
- Le coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant se déploie également avec une violence considérable qui peut causer des blessures graves, voire mortelles, si le passager avant se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. Éloignez le siège du passager avant au maximum du coussin gonflable et réglez le dossier de siège de façon à être assis bien droit dans le siège.
- Les nourrissons et les enfants qui ne sont pas correctement assis et/ou protégés peuvent être grièvement blessés ou tués par le déploiement d'un coussin gonflable. Installez dans un siège de sécurité enfant les nourrissons et les enfants trop petits pour pouvoir utiliser la ceinture de sécurité. Scion recommande vivement d'installer tous les nourrissons et enfants sur les sièges arrière du véhicule et de prévoir pour eux des systèmes de retenue adaptés. Les sièges arrière sont plus sûrs pour les nourrissons et les enfants que le siège du passager avant.



- Ne vous asseyez pas sur le bord du siège et ne vous appuyez pas contre le tableau de bord.

ATTENTION

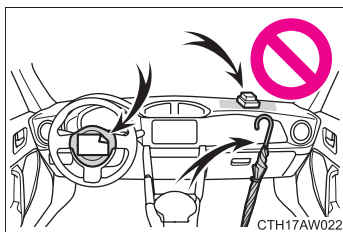
■ Précautions concernant les coussins gonflables SRS



- Ne laissez pas un enfant rester debout devant le coussin gonflable SRS passager avant ou bien s'asseoir sur les genoux du passager avant.
- Ne laissez pas les occupants des sièges avant voyager avec un objet sur les genoux.
- Ne vous appuyez pas contre la porte, contre le rail latéral de toit ou contre les montants avant, latéraux et arrière.
- Ne laissez personne se mettre à genoux sur le siège du passager en appui contre la porte ou sortir la tête ou les mains à l'extérieur du véhicule.

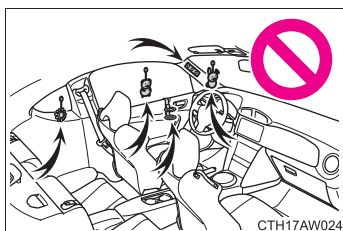
ATTENTION

■ Précautions concernant les coussins gonflables SRS



- Ne fixez rien ni ne disposez quoi que ce soit sur des emplacements tels que le tableau de bord ou la garniture du volant de direction.

Ces objets pourraient devenir des projectiles lorsque les coussins gonflables SRS conducteur ou passager se déclenchent.



- Ne fixez rien aux portes, à la vitre de pare-brise, aux vitres latérales, à la lunette arrière, aux montants avant et arrière, ni au rail latéral de toit.

- N'utilisez aucun accessoire de siège venant recouvrir les zones de déploiement des coussins gonflables latéraux SRS, car il risquerait d'en gêner le déploiement. De tels accessoires peuvent empêcher les coussins gonflables latéraux de fonctionner correctement, désactiver le dispositif ou entraîner le déploiement accidentel des coussins gonflables latéraux, ce qui pourrait entraîner la mort ou des blessures graves.

ATTENTION

■ Précautions concernant les coussins gonflables SRS

- Ne faites pas subir de chocs ou de pressions excessives aux parties renfermant les composants des coussins gonflables SRS (→P. 422).
En effet, cela pourrait entraîner un fonctionnement anormal des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Ne touchez aucun composant du système immédiatement après le déploiement (gonflage) des coussins gonflables SRS, car ils peuvent être chauds.
- Si vous avez des difficultés à respirer après le déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS, ouvrez une porte ou une vitre pour faire entrer de l'air frais, ou bien descendez du véhicule si cela ne présente pas de danger. Essayez tout résidu dès que possible afin d'éviter d'éventuelles irritations de la peau.
- Si les parties renfermant les coussins gonflables SRS, comme le bloc du volant de direction et les garnitures des montants avant et arrière, par exemple, montrent des craquelures ou des détériorations, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Scion.

ATTENTION

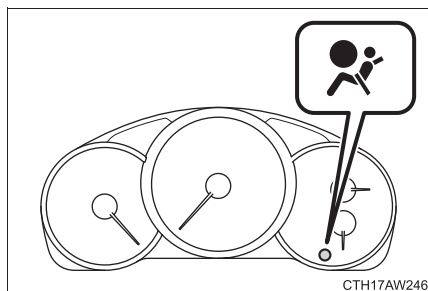
■ **Modification et mise au rebut des éléments du système de coussins gonflables SRS**

Ne vous débarrassez pas de votre véhicule ou n'effectuez pas les modifications suivantes sans consulter votre concessionnaire Scion.

Les coussins gonflables SRS peuvent être défailants ou se déployer (se gonfler) accidentellement, provoquant la mort ou de graves blessures.

- Installation, dépose, démontage et réparation des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Réparation, modification, démontage ou remplacement du volant, du tableau de bord, de la planche de bord, des sièges ou de leur garniture, des montants avant, latéraux et arrière ou des rails latéraux de toit.
- Réparation ou modification des ailes avant, du pare-choc avant ou des flancs de l'habitacle.
- Installation d'un protège-calandre (pare-buffle, pare-kangourou, etc.), de chasse-neiges, de treuils.
- Modification du système de suspension du véhicule.
- Installation d'appareils électroniques, tels qu'un radio émetteur/récepteur ou d'un lecteur CD.
- Aménagement du véhicule pour une personne atteinte d'un handicap physique.

Moniteurs du système de coussins gonflables SRS



Un système de diagnostic contrôle en permanence la disponibilité du système de coussins gonflables SRS (prétensionneurs de ceinture de sécurité du siège avant compris) lors de la conduite du véhicule. Le témoin d'avertissement SRS indique le fonctionnement normal du système en s'allumant pendant environ 6 secondes lorsque le bouton "ENGINE START STOP" est en mode IGNITION ON.

Les composants suivants sont contrôlés par le témoin:

- Capteur secondaire avant (côté droit)
- Capteur secondaire avant (côté gauche)
- Module de contrôle de coussin gonflable (capteurs d'impacts compris)
- Module de coussin gonflable frontal (côté conducteur)
- Module de coussin gonflable frontal (côté passager avant)
- Capteur de coussin gonflable latéral (montant central, côté droit)
- Capteur de coussin gonflable latéral (montant central, côté gauche)
- Capteur d'impact de porte (côté droit)
- Capteur d'impact de porte (côté gauche)

- Module de coussin gonflable latéral (côté conducteur)
- Module de coussin gonflable latéral (côté passager avant)
- Capteur de coussin gonflable rideau (emplacement roue arrière, côté droit)
- Capteur de coussin gonflable rideau (emplacement roue arrière, côté gauche)
- Module de coussin gonflable rideau (côté droit)
- Module de coussin gonflable rideau (côté gauche)
- Capteur satellite de sécurité (sous le milieu de la banquette arrière)
- Prétensionneur de ceinture de sécurité (côté conducteur)
- Prétensionneur de ceinture de sécurité (côté passager avant)
- Bouton de boucle de ceinture de sécurité (côté passager avant)
- Capteur de système de classification d'occupant de siège du passager avant
- Module de commande de détection d'occupant de siège du passager avant
- Témoin indicateur MARCHE et ARRÊT du coussin gonflable frontal du passager avant
- Tous les câblages associés

ATTENTION

■ Témoin d'avertissement SRS

Si le témoin d'avertissement montre l'un des états suivants, il peut y avoir un mauvais fonctionnement des prétensionneurs de ceintures de sécurité, du système de coussins gonflables SRS et/ou du système de classification d'occupant de siège du passager avant. Amenez immédiatement votre véhicule au concessionnaire Scion le plus proche pour une vérification du système. Sans vérification ou réparation adaptées, les prétensionneurs des ceintures de sécurité, les coussins gonflables SRS et/ou le système de classification d'occupant de siège du passager avant ne fonctionneront pas correctement en cas de collision, ce qui pourrait augmenter les risques de blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Clignotement ou vacillement du témoin d'avertissement
- Le témoin d'avertissement ne s'allume pas lorsque le bouton "ENGINE START STOP" est d'abord mis en mode IGNITION ON.
- Le témoin d'avertissement est allumé en continu
- Le témoin d'avertissement s'allume pendant la conduite

Index

Abbreviation list	438
Alphabetical index	439
What to do if... ..	449

Abbreviation list

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
ACC	Accessory
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EPS	Electric Power Steering
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Ratings
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
LATCH	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LSD	Limited Slip Differential
M + S	Mud and Snow
MMT	Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Warning System
TRAC	Traction Control
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

A	A/C	220
	ABS	201
	Air conditioning filter	298
	Air conditioning system	
	Air conditioning filter	298
	Automatic air conditioning system.....	220
	Airbags	
	Airbag operating conditions	96, 104
	Airbag precautions for your child.....	110
	Airbag warning light.....	334
	Curtain shield airbag operating conditions.....	104
	Curtain shield airbag precautions	110
	Front passenger occupant classification system	117
	General airbag precautions	110
	Locations of airbags	82
	Modification and disposal of airbags	114
	Proper driving posture	80, 110
	Side airbag operating conditions.....	104
	Side airbag precautions	110
	Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions.....	104
	Side and curtain shield airbags precautions.....	110
	SRS airbags	82
	Alarm	75

Anti-lock brake system	201
Audio input	231
Audio system	
Audio input	231
AUX port.....	231
iPod	231
Portable music player.....	231
USB memory.....	231
USB port.....	231
Automatic air conditioning system	220
Automatic light control system	188
Automatic transmission	
Automatic transmission	162
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....	360
Manual mode	165
Mode select switch.....	164
AUX port	231

B	Back-up lights	
	Replacing light bulbs	311
	Wattage.....	389
	Battery	
	Checking	279
	If the vehicle has a discharged battery	366
	Preparing and checking before winter	212
	Bottle holders	237
	Brake	
	Fluid	277
	Parking brake	173
	Brake assist	201
	Break-in tips	143
	Brightness control	
	Instrument panel light control	177

C

Care

Exterior	250
Interior	254
Seat belts	255

Cargo capacity207

Chains214

Child restraint system

Booster seats,	
definition	125
Booster seats,	
installation	129
Convertible seats,	
definition	125
Convertible seats,	
installation	129
Front passenger occupant	
classification system	117
Infant seats,	
definition	125
Infant seats,	
installation	129
Installing CRS with	
LATCH anchors	130
Installing CRS with	
seat belts	132
Installing CRS with	
top tether straps	135

Child safety

Airbag precautions	110
Battery precautions	281, 368
Child restraint system	125
How your child should	
wear the seat belt	56
Installing child restraints	129
Power window lock switch	66
Power window	
precautions	68
Removed key battery	
precautions	302
Seat belt guide	55
Seat belt precautions	58
Trunk precautions	44

Cleaning

Exterior	250
Interior	254
Seat belts	255

Clock242

Condenser277

Console tray238

Cooling system

Engine overheating	370
--------------------------	-----

Cruise control 196

Cup holders238

Customizable features407

D

Daytime running light

system	191
--------------	-----

Defogger

Rear window	229
Side mirror	229

Dimension378

Dinghy towing217

Display

Multi-information display	183
Trip information	184

Do-it-yourself maintenance264

Doors

Door lock	23, 37, 40
Door windows	66
Side mirrors	63

Driver's seat belt

reminder light	336
----------------------	-----

Driving

Break-in tips	143
Correct posture	80
Procedures	140
Winter drive tips	212

E	Electric power steering.....	201
	Electronic key	
	If the electronic key does not operate properly.....	362
	Emergency flashers	
	Switch.....	322
	Emergency, in case of	
	If the electronic key does not operate properly.....	362
	If the engine will not start.....	357
	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....	360
	If the vehicle has a discharged battery	366
	If the warning buzzer sounds	333
	If the warning light turns on.....	333
	If you have a flat tire	346
	If you lose your keys.....	361
	If you think something is wrong	331
	If your vehicle becomes stuck.....	373
	If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency	375
	If your vehicle needs to be towed	323
	If your vehicle overheats	370

Engine	
Compartment	271
Engine switch	153
Hood.....	267
How to start the engine	153
Identification number.....	379
If the engine will not start	357
Ignition switch.....	153
Overheating.....	370
Engine coolant	
Capacity	384
Checking	275
Engine coolant temperature gauge.....	175
Engine immobilizer system.....	73
Engine oil	
Capacity	382
Checking	272
Preparing and checking before winter.....	212
“ENGINE START STOP” switch light.....	233
Engine switch.....	153
EPS.....	201
Event data recorder	16

F	Floor mat.....	246
	Fluid	
	Brake.....	277
	Washer.....	282
	Front passenger occupant classification system	117
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light.....	336
	Front seats	
	Adjustment	47
	Front side marker light	
	Replacing light bulbs.....	311
	Wattage.....	389
	Front turn signal lights	
	Replacing light bulbs.....	311
	Switch.....	172
	Wattage.....	389
	Fuel	
	Capacity	381
	Fuel gauge	175
	Fuel pump shut off system	332
	Gas station information	452
	Information	390
	Refueling.....	69
	Fuel door.....	69
	Fuel filler door.....	69
	Fuel pump shut off system	332
	Fuses.....	303

G	Gauges.....	175
	Glove box	236
H	Hazard lights	
	Switch	322
	Head restraints	
	Adjusting	52
	Headlights	
	Discharge headlight precautions.....	320
	Replacing light bulbs.....	311
	Switch	188
	Wattage.....	389
	Heaters	
	Side mirror	229
	Hood.....	267
	Horn	174
I	I/M test	263
	Identification	
	Engine.....	379
	Vehicle	379
	Ignition switch.....	153
	Ignition switch light	
	Ignition switch light.....	233
	Illuminated entry system.....	233
	Immobilizer system	73
	Indicator lights	179
	Inside rear view mirror	62
	Interior light	
	Interior light	234
	Switch	234
	Wattage.....	389

J

Jack

- Positioning a floor jack 269
- Vehicle-equipped
jack..... 346

Jack handle..... 346

K

Keyless entry..... 37

Keys

- Electronic key 20
- Engine switch 153
- If you lose your keys..... 361
- If your electronic key
battery is discharged..... 362
- Key number 20
- Keyless entry..... 37
- Keys 20
- Mechanical key..... 20
- Wireless remote
control key..... 37

L

License plate lights

- Replacing light bulbs 311
- Wattage 389

Light bulbs

- Replacing 311
- Wattage 389

Lights

- Emergency flasher switch 322
- “ENGINE START STOP”
switch light 233
- Hazard light switch 322
- Headlights switch 188
- Interior light switch..... 234
- Replacing light bulbs 311
- Turn signal lever..... 172
- Wattage 389

Load capacity 211

M

Maintenance

- Do-it-yourself
maintenance264
- General maintenance.....260
- Maintenance data.....378
- Maintenance requirements....258

Manual transmission169

Meter

- Instrument panel
light control177
- Meters175

Mirrors

- Inside rear view mirror.....62
- Side mirror heater229
- Side mirrors63
- Vanity mirrors241

Multi-information display183

N Noise from under vehicle 14

O Odometer 175

Oil

Engine oil 272

Opener

Fuel filler door 69

Hood 267

Trunk 42

Outside rear view mirrors

Adjusting and folding 63

Outside temperature

display 243

Overheating, Engine 370

P Parking brake 173

Parking lights

Replacing light bulbs 311

Switch 188

Wattage 389

Power outlets 244

Power windows 66

R Radiator 277

Rear seats 50

Rear side marker lights

Replacing light bulbs 311

Wattage 389

Rear turn signal lights

Replacing light bulbs 311

Switch 172

Wattage 389

Rear window defogger 229

Replacing

Fuses 303

Key battery 301

Light bulbs 311

Tires 346

Reporting safety defects

for U.S. owners 412

REV indicator 143

S

Seat belts

Adjusting the seat belt.....	54
Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR).....	56
Child restraint system installation	129
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts.....	255
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).....	56
How to wear your seat belt.....	54
How your child should wear the seat belt.....	56
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use	59
Reminder light	336
Seat belt guide	55
Seat belt pretensioners	55

Seating capacity.....	211
------------------------------	------------

Seats

Adjustment	47
Adjustment precautions.....	49
Child seats/child restraint system installation	129
Cleaning	254
Head restraint.....	52
Properly sitting in the seat.....	80

Service reminder

indicators	179
-------------------------	------------

Shift lever

Automatic transmission	162
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....	360
Manual transmission	169

Shift lock system	360
--------------------------------	------------

Side airbags.....	82
--------------------------	-----------

Side marker lights

Replacing light bulbs	311
Switch.....	188
Wattage.....	389

Side mirror

Adjusting and folding.....	63
----------------------------	----

Smart key system

Antenna location	25
Entry function	23
Starting the engine	153

Spare tire	
Inflation pressure.....	388
Storage location	346
Spark plug	384
Specifications.....	378
Speedometer	
Speedometer.....	175
Steering	
Column lock release.....	61
Steering wheel	
Adjustment	61
Storage feature.....	235
Stuck	
If your vehicle becomes stuck	373
Sun visors.....	240
Switch	
Driving mode selector switch.....	164
Emergency flasher switch	322
Engine switch.....	153
Hazard light switch.....	322
Ignition switch.....	153
Light switches.....	188
“ODO/TRIP” switch	176
Power door lock switch.....	40
Power window switch.....	66
Transmission shift switches	165, 167
Window lock switch.....	66
Wiper and washer switch.....	193

T

Tachometer	
Tachometer.....	175
Tail lights	
Switch	188
Theft deterrent system	
Alarm.....	75
Engine immobilizer system	73
Theft prevention labels	79
Tire inflation pressure	388
Tire information	
Glossary.....	400
Size	397
Tire identification number.....	396
Uniform tire quality grading.....	398
Tires	
Chains.....	214
Checking	284
Compact spare tire.....	346
If you have a flat tire.....	346
Inflation pressure	291
Inflation pressure sensor.....	284
Information.....	394
Replacing	346
Rotating tires.....	284
Size	388
Snow tires	212
Spare tire	346
Tire pressure warning system	336

Tools.....	346
Towing	
Dinghy towing.....	217
Emergency towing.....	323
TRAC.....	201
Traction control.....	201
Transmission shift	
switches.....	165, 167
Trip meter.....	175
Trunk	
Opener	42
Trunk light	
Wattage	389
Turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs	311
Switch.....	172
Wattage	389

U

USB port	231
-----------------------	------------

V

Vanity mirrors.....	241
Vehicle identification	
number	379
Vehicle stability control.....	201
VSC.....	201
“VSC SPORT” mode	202

W

Warning buzzers

- Electric power steering 334
- Seat belt reminder 336

Warning lights

- Automatic transmission
 - fluid temperature
 - warning light 336
- Anti-lock brake
 - system 334
- Brake assist system 334
- Brake system 333
- Charging system 333
- Cruise control
 - indicator light 334
- Electric power steering
 - system warning light 334
- Electronic engine control
 - system 334
- Engine oil pressure 333
- Low fuel level 336
- Low tire pressure 336
- Malfunction indicator
 - lamp 334
- Open door 336
- Pretensioners 334
- Seat belt reminder
 - light 336
- Slip indicator light 334
- Smart key system 334, 343
- SRS airbags 334
- Tire pressure warning
 - system 336

Washer

- Checking 282
- Preparing and checking
 - before winter 212
- Switch 193

Washing and waxing 250

Weight

- Cargo capacity 207
- Load limits 211
- Weight 378

Wheels 295

Window glasses 66

Window lock switch 66

Windows

- Power windows 66
- Rear window defogger 229
- Washer 193

Windshield wipers 193

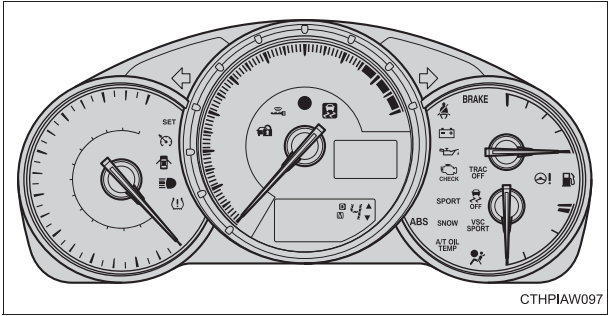
Wireless remote control key

- Locking/Unlocking 37
- Replacing the battery 301
- Wireless remote control key 37

What to do if...

What to do if...

A tire punctures	P. 346	If you have a flat tire
The engine does not start	P. 357	If the engine will not start
	P. 73	Engine immobilizer system
	P. 366	If the battery is discharged
The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 360	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P
The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 370	If your vehicle overheats
Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
The key is lost	P. 361	If you lose your keys
The battery runs out	P. 366	If the battery is discharged
The doors cannot be locked	P. 40	Doors
The horn begins to sound	P. 75	Alarm
The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 373	If the vehicle becomes stuck
A warning light or indicator light comes on	P. 333	If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

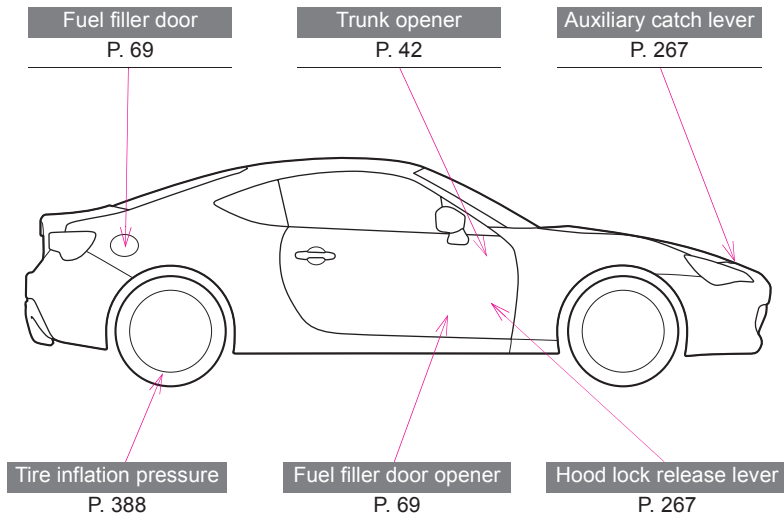


■Warning lights

	Brake system warning light		Electric power steering warning light	P. 334
or				
			Smart key system indicator light	P. 334, 343
	Charging system warning light		Slip indicator	P. 334
	Low engine oil pressure warning light		Cruise control indicator light*	P. 334
	Malfunction indicator lamp		Open door warning light	P. 336
or				
			Low fuel level warning light	P. 336
	SRS warning light		Driver's seat belt reminder light	P. 336
	P. 334			
	ABS warning light		Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	P. 336
or				
			Tire pressure warning light	P. 336
	P. 334			
			Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light	P. 336

*: The light comes on in yellow to indicate a malfunction.

GAS STATION INFORMATION



CTHPIAW047

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	13.2 gal. (50 L, 11.0 Imp. gal.)		
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only		P. 69, 381
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 388		
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		qt. (L, Imp. qt.)	
	Without filter	5.5 (5.2, 4.6)	
	With filter	5.7 (5.4, 4.8)	
Engine oil type	P. 382		

